

www.inglescombruno.com.br



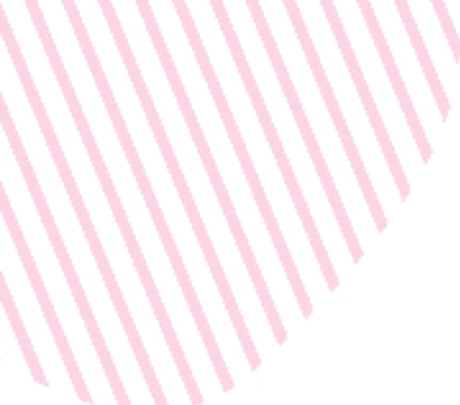
TEACHER BRUNO
BOOK 2

INTERMEDIATE



Level	Pre Intermediate
Material	English Conversation
Target structures	Ser capaz de entender e usar: Comunicação - Desenvolver as estruturas, vocabulário e formas de linguagem necessárias para expressar-se em diferentes Funções; (Viagem, Trabalho, Lazer, Etc...) - Produzir texto conectado simples em tópicos que são familiares ou de interesse pessoal. - Aprender a usar Estruturas e Expressões maiores. Compreensão - Poder entender os principais pontos de entrada padrão clara sobre assuntos familiares regularmente encontrados no trabalho, escola, lazer, etc.
Goals	Lesson 01 - 24 - Frequency Adverbs - Simple past "Regular verbs" - Simple past "Irregular verbs" - Simple Past of "to be" - Quantifiers - Modal Verbs - Future Contínuo - Simple Future - Determiners (Some, any, no)
Skills	Speaking: - Se comunicar usando os tempos verbais Passado, Presente e Futuro (Simples e Contínuo). - Manter diálogos Mais expansivos nos tempos Verbais mencionados acima. Listening: - Entender perguntas e diálogos sobre trabalho, viagem, rotina etc... - Entender pequenas frases em músicas, filmes, podcasts etc... Reading: - Leitura de sentenças medianas de pequenos artigos e textos em Inglês. Writing: - Escrever sentenças usando os tempos verbais mencionados no Basic I, II + Futuro Simples e Contínuo.
Capabilities	Ao final da Lesson 24 o aluno será capaz de: - Entender os principais pontos de entrada padrão clara sobre assuntos familiares regularmente encontrados no trabalho, escola, lazer, etc. - Lidar com a maioria das situações que podem surgir enquanto viaja em uma área onde a língua é falada. - Interagir com um grau de fluência e espontaneidade que facilita a interação regular com falantes nativos sem tensão para qualquer das partes. - Produzir textos claros e detalhados sobre uma ampla gama de assuntos e explicar um ponto de vista sobre uma questão atual, oferecendo vantagens e desvantagens de várias opções.

— □ X	
Level	Intermediate
Material	English Conversation
Target structures	Ser capaz de entender e usar: Comunicação - Desenvolver as estruturas, vocabulário e produzir conversas, expressar opiniões sobre assuntos mais formais e que envolvam uma comunicação Profissional e Social. Compreensão - Ser capaz de entender Textos, Jornais, Podcast, Vídeos e entre outros recursos de assuntos populares.
Goals	Lesson 25 - 48 - Relative clauses - Zero and First Conditional - Second Conditional - Used to and Be used to - Present Perfect - Present Perfect - Since and For - Present Perfect with adverbs - Present Perfect Continuous - Reported Speech - Passive Voice - Should have, Must have, Could have - Third Conditional - Past Perfect - Past Perfect II - Phrasal Verbs I
Skills	Speaking: - Comunicação Passado, Presente, Futuro Simples e Contínuo. - Manter diálogos curtos (Presente simples e contínuo/Passado Simples e Contínuo). Listening: - Entender perguntas e diálogos sobre trabalho, hobbies, rotina etc... - Entender pequenas frases em músicas, filmes, podcasts etc... Reading: - Leitura de Textos, Jornais, Artigos e Informações em Inglês. Writing: - Escrever sentenças mencionados no Basic I, II, Pre Intermediate + Past/Present Perfect.
Capabilities	Ao final da Lesson 48 o aluno será capaz de: - Compreender as principais idéias de texto complexo em temas concretos e abstratos, incluindo discussões técnicas em seu campo de especialização. - Interagir com um grau de espontaneidade que facilita a interação regular com falantes da Língua, sem tensão para qualquer das partes. - Pode produzir textos claros e detalhados sobre uma ampla gama de assuntos e explicar um ponto de vista sobre uma questão atual, oferecendo vantagens e desvantagens de várias opções.



ENGLISH CONVERSATION INTERMEDIATE ENGLISH SUMMARY

LESSONS	PAGES
Lesson 01.....	01-04
Lesson 02.....	05-08
Lesson 03.....	09-12
Lesson 04.....	13-16
Lesson 05.....	17
Lesson 06.....	18-21
Lesson 07.....	22-25
Lesson 08.....	26-29
Lesson 09.....	30-33
Lesson 10.....	34
Lesson 11.....	35-38
Lesson 12.....	39-42
Lesson 13.....	43-46
Lesson 14.....	47-49
Lesson 15.....	50-51
Lesson 16.....	52-55
Lesson 17.....	56-59
Lesson 18.....	60-63
Lesson 19.....	64-67
Lesson 20.....	68
Lesson 21.....	69-72
Lesson 22.....	73-76
Lesson 23.....	77-80
Lesson 24.....	81-84
Lesson 25.....	85
Lesson 26.....	86-89
Lesson 27.....	90-93
Lesson 28.....	94-97
Lesson 29.....	98-101
Lesson 30.....	102
Lesson 31.....	103-106
Lesson 32.....	107-110
Lesson 33.....	111-114
Lesson 34.....	115-118
Lesson 35.....	119
Lesson 36.....	120-123
Lesson 37.....	124-127
Lesson 38.....	128-131
Lesson 39.....	132-135
Lesson 40.....	136
Lesson 41.....	137-140
Lesson 42.....	141-144
Lesson 43.....	145-148
Lesson 44.....	149-152
Lesson 45.....	153
Lesson 46.....	154-157
Lesson 47.....	158-161
Lesson 48.....	162-163



LESSON 01

INDEFINITE FREQUENCY ADVERBS

Frequency Adverbs

Always
Usually
Often
Sometimes
Occasionally
Seldom
Rarely
Never

Advérbios de frequência

Sempre
Geralmente
Frequentemente
Às vezes
Ocasionalmente
Difícilmente
Raramente
Nunca

Practicing

I always study hard.
You usually work overtime.
He often plays soccer.
She sometimes works out.
It occasionally breaks.
They seldom go out.
You rarely ride a bike.
We never eat out.
He usually goes to the gym.
They often call their cousins.
She always does her homework.
They usually walk to work.
I never give up on my dreams

Praticando

Eu sempre estudo muito.
Você geralmente faz hora extra.
Ele frequentemente joga futebol.
Ela às vezes malha.
Isso quebra ocasionalmente.
Eles dificilmente saem.
Vocês raramente andam de bicicleta.
Nós nunca comemos fora.
Ele geralmente vai para academia.
Elas frequentemente ligam para suas primas.
Ela sempre faz seu dever de casa.
Eles geralmente caminham para o trabalho.
Eu nunca desisto dos meus sonhos.

Reading

Mr. John has a very busy life. On Mondays, he **always** wakes up at five o'clock because he has meetings starting at 07:00 in his office. From Tuesdays to Thursdays, he **often** gets to work around 09. His boss Tim, **never** gets upset because of that due to the results John achieves. On Fridays, he **occasionally** has meetings, so he takes the day to update and organize his tasks for the next week.

On weekends, he **never** stays home. John is married to Claire and they have two children. He **always** takes his family to somewhere nice and quiet in order to relax from the weekdays. They **usually** go to their ranch in the countryside. There they **often** go fishing and celebrate life the best way possible. The children really love riding horses and playing around. They sometimes even go hiking.



Your turn

Make sentences orally with at least 5 words you consider new to you.

MORE

DEFINITE FREQUENCY ADVERBS

Once (a day)
Twice (a week)
Three times (a month)
Several times (a year)
Hourly
Daily
Monthly
Yearly
Every hour
Every day
Every month
Every year
On Saturdays
On Sundays
On/At
weekdays
On/At
weekends
Once in a while
Once in a blue moon (expression)

Uma vez (por dia)
Duas vezes (por semana)
Três vezes (por mês)
Várias vezes (por ano)
De hora em hora
Diariamente
Mensalmente
Anualmente
De hora em hora
Todos os dias
Todos os meses
Todos os anos
Nos sábados
Nos domingos
Nos dias da semana
Nos fins de semana
De vez em quando
De vez em quando (expressão)

Practice the conversations below.

Conversation 1

Peter: What do you do on the weekends?
John: **Usually** watch a movie at home, but **sometimes** I go out.
Peter: Oh, where do you go?
John: **Sometimes**, I go to the park. **Sometimes**, I go to the zoo.
Peter: **Often** go there, too. Do you ever go to the mall?
John: No, I **rarely** go to the mall. It's very expensive.



Conversation 2

Peter: John, **how often** do you work out?
John: **Always** workout in the morning, before going to the office.
Peter: Great, and where do you **usually** workout?
John: **Usually** workout at the gym near my house.
Peter: I go there **once in a while**. **Never** exercise at home.
John: **Occasionally** go running in the park, as well.



REMEMBER

Indefinite frequency adverbs come before the main verb and definite frequency adverbs are placed commonly at the end of the sentence. But they can be also placed at the beginning of the sentence.

PRACTICE

Rewrite the sentences below using the frequency adverbs in brackets in their correct position

1- She goes to the movies with her friends. (*sometimes*)

2- He watches the news before going to college. (*always*)

3- They play baseball at Foxborough Stadium (*every Sunday*).

4- The children go out alone. It's dangerous. (*never*)

5- I eat red meat. (*never*)

Unscramble the sentences below in the right order

1- late / are / they / sometimes

2- early / up / mom / never / Saturdays / on / gets / my

3- usually / he / goes / to / on / Mondays / the / movies

4- travel / you / vacation / often / do / how / on / ?

5- he / the / beach / to / always / goes / in / the / summer

6- sometimes / Fridays / goes / she / grocery / on / shopping

Use the lines below to write sentences about your life with the frequency adverbs that you learned

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____

Check your understanding

Write down the frequency adverbs in the correct group.

Once (a day) / Often / twice (a week) / Three times (a month) / Sometimes / Several times (a year) / Hourly / Daily / Monthly / Yearly / Every hour / Every day / Usually / Every month / Every year / On Saturdays / On weekdays / At weekends / Once in a while / Once in a blue moon (expression) / Always / On Sundays / Occasionally / Seldom / Rarely / Never

Before the main verb	At the end of the clause

Translate the dialogue below.

Paul – Graig, com que frequência você sai com seus amigos para se divertir?

Graig – Eu saio com eles todos os finais de semana, e você?

Paul – Eu dificilmente saio com meus amigos aos finais de semana, porque eu sempre estudo para as provas.
Mas às vezes eu os convido para vir estudar em casa.

Graig – Isso é bacana, Paul. Eu nunca estudo para provas, eu geralmente dou uma olhada no assunto poucas horas antes.

Paul – De vez em quando eu faço isso. Mas apenas quando eu estou muito cansado para estudar nos finais de semana.

Write down the frequency adverbs presented in the dialogue:

EXPRESSIONS

To hang out – sair para se divertir
“I hang out with my friends”

To have fun – se divertir
“I have fun when I hang out with my friends”



LESSON 02

SIMPLE PAST—REGULAR VERBS

Verbs

I studied.
You learned.
He walked.
She loved.
It closed.
They worked.
We called.

Practicing

She watched a nice movie yesterday. I worked until late last night.
You closed the store earlier on Monday. They traveled to the USA last year.
It worked fine last time I used it.
My mom called me last week.
He figured out a way to solve the problem.
We walked to work.
They turned 18 last month.
He arrived late at school.
It ended before it even started.
They listened to music at the lecture.
She stopped smoking a year ago.
We studied English and French in Canada.

Negative

She didn't like the food.
He didn't clean his bedroom.
They didn't cook for the guests.
We didn't plug the wire into the outlet.
The teacher didn't cancel the class.
She didn't reply the e-mail.

Interrogative

Did you cry when you dropped the ice cream?
Did he borrow his brother's jacket?
Did she need to send the report?
Did they skip classes to go out?
Did you try on the new suit?
Did it fit well on you?

Verbos

Eu estudei.
Você aprendeu.
Ele caminhou.
Ela adorou.
Fechou.
Elas trabalharam.
Nós ligamos.

Praticando

Ela assistiu a um filme legal ontem.
Eu trabalhei até tarde da noite passada.
Você fechou a loja mais cedo na segunda.
Eles viajaram para os Estados Unidos ano passado.
Funcionou bem da última vez que usei.
Minha mãe me ligou semana passada.
Ele encontrou uma maneira de solucionar o problema.
Nós caminhamos para o trabalho.
Elas fizeram 18 anos mês passado.
Ele chegou atrasado na escola.
Terminou antes mesmo de começar.
Eles ouviram música na palestra.
Ela parou de fumar um ano atrás.
Estudamos inglês e francês no Canadá.

Negativo

Ela não gostou da comida.
Ele não limpou o seu quarto.
Eles não cozinham para os convidados.
Não conectamos o fio na tomada.
O professor não cancelou a aula.
Ela não respondeu o e-mail.

Interrogativo

Você chorou quando derrubou o sorvete?
Ele pegou a jaqueta do irmão dele emprestada?
Ela precisou enviar o relatório?
Eles faltaram às aulas para saírem?
Você experimentou o novo terno?
Serviu bem em você?

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

Peter – Susie, did you invite our friends over tonight?

Susie – Yes, I did. I called them last night.

Peter – That's great. Did they accept the invitation?

Susie – Yes, they did. And they invited their relatives to come over as well.

Peter – Ok. I noticed that they watched TV for too long last time so, I unplugged it.



Conversation 2

Greg – Hey Paul, how's it going?

Paul – Hey Greg, I'm doing fine.

Greg – Paul, I watched the game on TV last night. Did you watch it?

Paul – No, I didn't. I received extra papers to fill, so I worked until late.

Greg – What a pity, buddy. I loved the results. I enjoyed each second of it.



PRESENT	PRETERITE	TRANSLATION
Accept	Accepted	Aceitar
Agree	Agreed	Concordar
Ask	Asked	Pedir/pergunta
Believe	Believed	r Acreditar
Call	Called	Ligar/chamar
Close	Closed	Fechar
Decide	Decided	Decidir
Dress	Dressed	Vestir
Die	Died	Morrer
Enjoy	Enjoyed	Desfrutar/gostar
Fix	Fixed	Consertar
Fry	Fried	Fritar
Need	Needed	Precisar
Open	Opened	Abrir
Shop	Shopped	Comprar

How to pronounce the “ED” ending

There are three different ways to pronounce the ‘ed’ ending of regular verbs in the simple past tense:
/ **ɪd** / , / **t** / or / **d** /.

The / **ɪd** / sound is pronounced after verbs ending in **T** and **D** sounds. E.g. (wanted, needed, started...)

The / **t** / sound is pronounced after verbs ending in **S**, **X**, **K**, **P**, **F**, **SH** and **CH** sounds. E.g. (fixed, worked, watched, developed, liked...)

The / **d** / sound is pronounced after verbs ending in all other endings. E.g. (cleaned, called, allowed, used, played, arrived...)

P RACTICE

A - Complete the sentences about last night with the simple past of the verbs.

1. (~~play~~) with my friends.
2. Jeff _____ (not / want) to play with us.
3. My father _____ (call) us and we _____ (talk) for a while.
4. We _____ (watch) movie but I _____ (not / like) very much.
5. She _____ (play) the guitar.
6. It _____ (rain), so I _____ (not / want) to go out.
7. Mom _____ (cook) and we _____ (help) her.
8. My cousin _____ (not / like) the meal.



B– Change the sentences below into negative and interrogative forms.

- 1- She decided to travel to Japan.

(Negative)

(Interrogative) _____

- 2- They shopped for hours yesterday.

(Negative)

(Interrogative) _____

- 3- Paul cooked dinner for his parents

(Negative)

(Interrogative) _____

- 4- We arrived late at school this morning.

(Negative)

(Interrogative) _____

- 5- *We finished the test before the expected time.*

(Negative)

(Interrogative) _____

C– Write true sentences about your last weekend. Add more information to the sentences.

- 1- Cook dinner I cooked dinner on Sunday or I didn't cook dinner on Sunday.
- 2- Clean the house _____
- 3- Listen to music _____
- 4- Call your friends _____
- 5- Study English _____
- 6- Stay home _____
- 7- Watch a game _____
- 8- Work out _____



PRACTICE

Last year, Paul and Susie traveled to London for two weeks. They stayed in a very busy hotel downtown. It was really fantastic because they talked to a lot of other visitors of different nationalities and learned a lot about other cultures and customs. Of course, they learned a lot of English too because they listened to it all day long, every single day. In the morning, they shopped a little, walked around the city and watched a play at the theater. In the afternoon, they visited different places and played at a famous casino. It was so much fun. They often walked down to the beach with some new friends and played or chatted. In the evening, they were tired so they sometimes watched videos or played board games.

The best days were Saturday and Sunday because they traveled to the surroundings. They also visited all the monuments like Big Ben, The London Eye and Buckingham Palace. They wanted to see the Queen but they didn't see her, only her guards.

At the end of the two weeks, they were sad to return home. The holidays were fun and different from usual. They cried a little when they waved goodbye to their new friends and promised to write or send emails when they arrived home.

Read the text and answer the following questions.

What did Paul and Susie do in the afternoon?

Did they learn a lot of English?

What did they do on the weekend?

Did they walk through the city?

What did they do when they waved goodbye to their new friends?

How often did they listen to English?



Fun with a tongue twister

Peter Piper picked a peck of pickled peppers.
A peck of pickled peppers Peter Piper picked.
If Peter Piper picked a peck of pickled peppers,
where's the peck of pickled peppers Peter Piper picked?

LESSON 03

SIMPLE PAST–IRREGULAR VERBS

Verbs

I did.
You went.

He bought.
She chose.
It broke.
They felt.
We heard.

Praticando

She chose a nice gift for her mom.
I did my homework last night.
You went to the store earlier on Monday.
They flew to the USA last year.
It broke when I used it last time.
My mom bought me some ice cream.
He felt tired after the game.
We heard you bought a new car.
They got an A on their English test.
He drove to school last semester.
The dog ate its food.
They drank wine at the party.
She went shopping for hours yesterday.
We knew about what you said.

Negative

She didn't go shopping yesterday.
He didn't feel tired after the game.
They didn't know about the test.
We didn't buy a new house.
My boss didn't give me a raise.
I didn't hurt myself.

Interrogative

Did you make the phone call?
Did he lose his wallet?
Did she see the e-mail I sent her?
Did they sell their house?
Did you sing at the festival?
Did we speak to the manager?

Verbs

Eu fiz.
Você foi.
Ele comprou.
Ela escolheu.
Quebrou.
Eles sentiram.
Nós ouvimos.

Praticando

Ela escolheu um presente bacana para a mãe dela.
Eu fiz meu dever de casa ontem.
Você foi à loja mais cedo na segunda.
Eles voaram para os Estados Unidos ano passado.
Quebrou quando eu usei na última vez.
Minha mãe me trouxe um pouco de sorvete.
Ele se sentiu cansado depois do jogo.
Nós ouvimos que você comprou um carro novo.
Elas tiram nota A na prova de inglês.
Ele dirigiu para escola no semestre passado.
O cachorro comeu a comida dele.
Eles beberam vinho na festa.
Ela fez compras por horas ontem.
Sabíamos sobre o que você disse.

Negative

Ela não foi às compras ontem.
Ele não se sentiu cansado depois do jogo.
Eles não sabiam sobre a prova.
Não compramos uma casa nova.
Meu chefe não me deu um aumento.
Eu não me machuquei.

Interrogative

Você fez a ligação?
Ele perdeu a carteira dele?
Ela viu o e-mail que eu enviei?
Eles venderam a casa deles?
Você cantou no festival?
Nós falamos com o gerente?

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

Linda – Hey Mary, I went to the movies to watch the movie you told me.

Mary – Awesome. What did you think about it?

Linda – I thought it has everything to do with me. When I saw the movie, many memories of my childhood came to my mind.

Mary – I knew it. I told you it has everything to do with you.

Linda – Thanks for the tip, Mary.

Conversation 2

Jake – Noah, did you pay for the statements I sent you by e-mail?

Noah – Yes, I did. I paid for them on the same day you sent.

Jake – Ok, but I didn't find the receipts back in my e-mail.

Noah – I made a transfer by money order and it usually takes a while to get through.

Jake – Oh man, you did it the wrong way. You didn't pay attention on my message on the e-mail. You had to pay in cash.

Noah – My apologies, Jake. I made a mistake!

PRESENT	PRETERITE	TRANSLATION
Build	Built	Construir
Bring	Brought	Trazer
Buy	Bought	Comprar
Come	Came	Vir
Do	Did	Fazer
Drive	Drove	Dirigir
Drink	Drank	Beber
Fall	Fell	Cair
Find	Found	Encontrar
Give	Gave	Dar
Have	Had	Ter
Keep	Kept	Manter
Know	Knew	Saber/Conhecer
Make	Made	Fazer
Say	Said	Dizer
Speak	Spoke	Falar
Write	Wrote	Escrever

Make at least 3 sentences in the past simple with the verbs given:

1- _____

2- _____

3- _____

PRACTICE

A - Read Jenna's planner. Then complete the sentences below using the simple past of the verbs in the box

Sunday	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday
See movie with Meg 1:00 ✓ Go to the Grand Theater 2:00 ✗ Do homework ✗	Read a book ✗ Read art magazine ✓ Homework ✗	Have English classes ✓ Write history paper ✗ Homework ✓	Go shopping with friends ✓ Read the news ✗ Homework ✓
Thursday	Friday	Saturday	
Make lunch ✗ Go to museum ✓ Homework ✓	Go grocery shopping ✓ Go to a party ✓ Homework ✗	English classes ✓ Read a novel ✗ Have fun with family ✓	

see – do – read – go – take – have – make – write

- On Sunday, Jenna saw a movie. She didn't see a play.
- On Monday, she _____ a magazine. She _____ a book and _____ her homework.
- On Tuesday, Jenna _____ English classes and _____ her homework. But she _____ the history paper.
- On Wednesday, Jenna _____ shopping with friends and _____ her homework. She _____ the news.
- On Thursday, Jenna _____ lunch. She _____ to the museum and _____ her homework.
- On Friday, Jenna _____ grocery shopping and _____ to a party but she _____ her homework.
- On Saturday, Jenna _____ English classes and _____ fun with her Family but _____ a novel.

B– Write true sentences about your last week.

- | | |
|-------------|-----------------|
| 1 Sunday | I <i>didn't</i> |
| 2 Monday | I <i>didn't</i> |
| 3 Tuesday | I <i>didn't</i> |
| 4 Wednesday | I <i>didn't</i> |
| 5 Thursday | I <i>didn't</i> |
| 6 Friday | I <i>didn't</i> |
| 7 Saturday | I <i>didn't</i> |

Expressions to talk about the past.

Yesterday – ontem	Two days ago – dois dias atrás
Last week – semana passada	A month ago – há um mês
Last month – mês passado	In 2020 – em 2020
Last year – ano passado	This morning – esta manhã
Last night – noite passada	While ago – há um tempo atrás

PRACTICE

C- Translate the sentences below into English using simple past of the irregular verbs.

1. Eu fui fazer compras com a minha mãe e minha irmã.
_____.
2. Ela não fez o dever de casa.
_____.
3. Você comprou tudo o que eu coloquei na lista?
_____.
4. O que ele fez na noite passada?
_____.
5. O que ela ganhou de aniversário no ano passado?
_____.
6. Eu não tive que fazer hora extra porque a máquina quebrou.
_____.
7. Nós enviamos todas as mercadorias pelo correio no mês passado.
_____.
8. Paul ganhou na loteria, comprou uma mansão e deu dinheiro para seus amigos.
_____.

D – Complete the text below with the correct form of the irregular verbs in the past.

Yesterday I _____ (wake up) earlier than the usual because I _____ (have) to take my car to the mechanic. I _____ (make) breakfast for the family, I _____ (see) the news on my cell phone, and right after that I _____ (take) a hot shower.
After I _____ (take) my car to the mechanic, I _____ (have) to hail a cab to get to work in time. Right after I _____ (get) to the office, I _____ (read) my e-mails and _____ (send) responses to my customers. I also _____ (have) a meeting with the team and _____ (go) pretty well.

E – Write down the preterite of the following verbs.

Begin –
Break –
Bring –
Come –
Cost –
Do –
Drive –
Drink –
Eat –

Feel –
Fly –
Forget –
Get –
Give –
Have –
Hear –
Hold –
Leave –

Let –
Meet –
Make –
Pay –
Put –
Run –
Say –
See –
Take –



LESSON 04

SIMPLEPAST-VERB TO BE

Verbs

I was.
You were.
He was.
She was.
It was.
They were.
We were

Verbs

Eu era / estava.
Você era / estava.
Ele era / estava.
Ela era / estava.
Isso era / estava.
Eles(as) eram / estavam.
Nós éramos / estávamos

Praticando

She was sick last week.
I was really busy this morning.
You were in New York last winter.
They were happy about the gifts.
It was very hot this afternoon.
My dad was a pilot when he was young.
He was excited to start his classes.
We were about to leave when they called us.
They were tired.
He was a lawyer.
It was a sunny day at the beach.
They were friends.
She was at the mall yesterday. We were at the party together.

Praticando

Ela estava doente na semana passada.
Eu estava bem ocupado esta manhã.
Você estava em Nova Iorque no último inverno.
Eles ficaram felizes com os presentes.
Estava muito quente esta tarde.
Meu pai era um piloto quando era jovem.
Ele estava animado para começar as aulas dele.
Nós estávamos para sair quando eles nos ligaram.
Elas estavam cansadas.
Ele era um advogado.
Era um dia ensolarado na praia.
Eles eram amigos.
Ela estava no shopping ontem.
Estávamos juntos na festa.

Negative

She wasn't at the mall with her friends.
He wasn't tired after the game.
They weren't happy about the test.
We weren't at home on Sunday.
My boss wasn't on vacation last month.
I wasn't late for class.

Negativo

Ela não estava no shopping com as amigas dela.
Ele não estava cansado depois do jogo.
Eles não ficaram felizes sobre a prova.
Não estávamos em casa no domingo.
Meu chefe não estava de férias no mês passado.
Eu não estava atrasado para a aula

Interrogative

Were you sad when your team lost?

Was he convicted and sent to prison?
Was she at school yesterday?
Was it a beautiful day?
Were they cold?
Were you angry with me?

Interrogativo

Você ficou triste quando seu time perdeu?
Ele foi condenado e enviado para a prisão?
Ela estava na escola ontem?
Estava um dia bonito?
Eles estavam com frio?
Você estava zangado comigo?

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

John – Hi, Carl, how was the movie last night?
Carl – It was pretty nice.
John – Was it an action movie?
Carl – No it wasn't. It was a thriller.
John – Great, I want to see it. Was it crowded?
Carl – Actually, it wasn't.



Conversation 2

Jane – Kate, do you know who was at the party yesterday?
Kate – Yes, I know. Everybody from our class was there. And so were the teachers.
Jane – What about your siblings, were they there as well?
Kate – No, they weren't. They were at home.
Jane – I tried to go there but the buses were off. I wasn't able to go.
Kate – What a pity!

Adjectives

Amazed – Maravilhado

Angry – Zangado

Awkward – Estranho

Careless – Descuidado

Clever – Esperto

Crazy – Louco

Delighted – Encantado

Difficult – Difícil

Disappointed – Desapontado

Easy – Fácil

Shy – Tímido

Funny – Divertido

Generous – Generoso

Glad – Contento

Happy – Feliz

Hard – Difícil

Horried – Apavorado

Impossible – Impossível

Lucky – Sortudo

Kind – Gentil

Nice – Legal

Proud –Orgulhoso

Make 5 sentences with the verb 'to be' in the simple past and the adjectives given above:

1- _____

2- _____

3- _____

4- _____

5- _____

PRACTICE

A – Complete the review below with *was*, *were*, *wasn't* or *weren't*:

"My wife and I _____ guests at a hotel in Orlando last month. Unfortunately, we _____ happy with our room. It pretty messy and clean. The bed _____ terribly made. Another point to take in consideration the fact that you said the location _____ near the beach, but it _____ The noise at night _____ also awful. But the people at the hotel _____ nice to us. So that excellent".



B – Write questions for the answers below using the verb 'to be' in the simple past:

- 1- _____ ? It was great.
- 2- _____ ? Yes, the lecture was interesting.
- 3- _____ ? I was sick at home.
- 4- _____ ? No, I wasn't there yesterday.
- 5- _____ ? Yes, we were at church on Sunday.
- 6- _____ ? My siblings were in Boston.

C – Translate the sentences below:

- 1- Peter estava cansado demais para ir ao jogo.

- 2- Estávamos certos sobre o relatório?

- 3- Vocês eram pequenos demais para entender isso.

- 4- Ele era professor naquele colégio estadual?

- 5- Ela estava muito bonita na festa.

- 6- Não era esse carro que eu queria comprar.

- 7- Ele estava feliz porque tirou 10 na prova.

- 8- Eu não estava no trabalho na noite passada.



PRACTICE

D- Choose the right form of the verb 'to be' to complete the text.

My name is Bob. Last week I was/were in San Francisco. The weather was/were cloudy and the sun wasn't/ weren't so hot. I was/were with my siblings. They was/were excited about going there. We went to a baseball game and it was/were awesome. The stadium was/were bustling and the people there was/were so nice. The view was/were so beautiful. We wasn't/weren't happy about going back home. We wanted to stay longer, so we was/were ready to get back when the air company sent a message saying all flights was/were off due to a possible bad weather.

E – Answer the questions according to the text above:

1- Where were Bob and his siblings last week?

2-How was the weather there?

3-Were they happy about San Francisco?

4- How was the baseball game?

5- Were they happy about going back home?

F – Complete the sentences below with *was/were/wasn't/weren't*.

1- John and Bob _____ at work yesterday, I saw them at the beach.

2- The customers _____ happy with the new manager. She was lovely.

3- Susie _____ home when the postman went there, so he left the package at the porch.

4- All the people at the festival _____ amazed by the song.

5- The cops _____ on strike for better benefits.



G – Answer the question below with your own information.

1-Where were you last night?

2- Were your parents happy about your grades when you were in school?

3- What was the weather like last Sunday?



LESSON 5 - QUARTER TEST I

READING COMPREHENSION

Bob's dream

Bob always wanted to be a cop when he was a kid. Every time he watched a movie about cops he went crazy. He remembers at once he saw a car chase and it was skillful. On that day, he said to himself, 'This is my future'. He rarely lost an opportunity to see something about cops.

His city was always quiet, so not much action happened. But every day he checked the news to see if a call occurred.

He often asked his dad to take him to the police station to know how the place was, but his dad never did. So he usually kept looking through the windows to see if any cop passed by, and it occasionally happened.

Now that he grew up, every time he has the chance to see a cop, he tries to talk to them. And once in a while he takes a pie to the police station and shares it with them.



A- There are 9 frequency adverbs in the text. Underline them and write them down according to each category.

Indefinite frequency adverbs

Definite frequency adverbs

B- Identify all the verbs in the text and write them in the present and preterite forms.

Present – Preterite

Present – Preterite

Present – Preterite

LESSON 06

PAST CONTINUOUS

Verbs

I was sleeping.
You were playing.
He was studying.
She was dancing.
It was working.
They were hiring.
We were walking.

Practicing

She was taking a hard test last week.
I was fishing with my friends.
You were traveling to Istanbul on Monday.
They were watching the game after school.
I was doing the dishes when my parents arrived.
My dad was going to the store with my mom.
He was walking his dog at the park.
We were learning English fast.
They were playing the guitar at the concert.
He was working at the theater.
It was raining really heavily.
They were eating pasta at the restaurant.
She was presenting the geography paper.
We were chatting with our friends.

Negative

She wasn't watching the soap opera.
He wasn't cleaning his room.
They weren't preparing the meals.
We weren't studying for the test.
My boss wasn't feeling well yesterday.
I wasn't following the rules.

Interrogative

Were you traveling with your family?
Was he applying for a new job?
Was she swimming in the pool?
Was it working properly?
Were they feeling well?
Were you baking a cake?

Verbos

Eu estava dormindo.
Você estava brincando.
Ele estava estudando.
Ela estava dançando.
Estava funcionando.
Eles estavam contratando.
Nós estávamos andando.

Praticando

Ela estava fazendo uma prova difícil semana passada.
Eu estava pescando com meus amigos.
Você estava viajando para Istanbul na segunda.
Eles estavam assistindo ao jogo depois da escola.
Eu estava lavando a louça quando meus pais chegaram.
Meu pai estava indo para a loja com minha mãe.
Ele estava caminhando com seu cachorro no parque.
Nós estávamos aprendendo inglês rapidamente.
Elas estavam tocando guitarra no show.
Ele estava trabalhando no teatro.
Estava chovendo muito forte.
Eles estavam comendo macarrão no restaurante.
Ela estava apresentando o trabalho de geografia.
Estávamos conversando com nossos amigos.

Negativo

Ela não estava assistindo à novela.
Ele não estava limpando o quarto dele.
Eles não estavam preparando as refeições.
Não estávamos estudando para a prova.
Meu chefe não estava se sentindo bem ontem.
Eu não estava seguindo as regras.

Interrogativo

Você estava viajando com sua família?
Ele estava se candidatando para um novo trabalho?
Ela estava nadando na piscina?
Estava funcionando devidamente?
Eles estavam se sentindo bem?
Vocês estavam assando um bolo?

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

Nick – Hi, Joe! What were you doing yesterday?

Joe – Hello, Nick. I was studying Japanese with my brother.

Nick – Oh, great. Were you teaching him?

Joe – No, I wasn't. I was learning from him.

Nick – I didn't know your brother knew how to speak Japanese.

Joe – Well, he and his wife were living in Tokyo last year, so they learned.



Conversation 2

Jane – Kate, I noticed you were talking to the teacher about the test.

Kate – Yes, I was trying to make him change his mind to apply the test on Friday or next week.

Jane – Was he agreeing with you when he nodded?

Kate – Not really, he was nodding on his affirmation, not mine.

Jane – Oh girl, we better be prepared then, because he wasn't playing around.

Kate – No, he wasn't. He was pretty serious about the test.



Verbs in the -ing form

Eat	– eating	Comer
Drink	– drinking	Beber
Speak	– speaking	Falar
Do	– doing	Fazer
Study	– studying	Estudar
Play	– playing	Jogar/Brincar
Work	– working	Trabalhar
Cook	– cooking	Cozinhar
Learn	– learning	Aprender
Jump	– jumping	Pular
Build	– building	Construir
Walk	– walking	Caminhar

Make	– making
Write	– Writing
Ride	– riding
Hope	– hoping
Agree	– agreeing
See	– seeing
Die	– dying
Tie	– tying
Lie	– lying
Sit	– sitting
Cut	– cutting
Stop	– stopping

Fazer
Escrever
Montar/Andar (cavalo/bicicleta...)
Esperar (desejar)
Concordar
Ver
Morrer
Amarrar
Mentir
Sentar
Cortar
Parar

Make 5 sentences in the past continuous with the verbs given above:

2-

3-

4-

5-

PRACTICE

A – Unscramble the sentences below and make affirmative, negative and interrogative sentences in the past continuous.

1- Jason / cooking / for his friends / was / dinner

Affirmative: _____

Negative: _____

Interrogative: _____

2- Pat and Jorge / to London / traveling / were.

Affirmative: _____

Negative: _____

Interrogative: _____

3- Playing / on the weekend / They / soccer / were.

Affirmative: _____

Negative: _____

Interrogative: _____

4- A movie / Sam / was / last night / watching.

Affirmative: _____

Negative: _____

Interrogative: _____

5- To music / listening / The children / were / arrived / when / we.

Affirmative: _____

Negative: _____

Interrogative: _____

6- Fun / The people / having / a lot of / were / at the park.

Affirmative: _____

Negative: _____

Interrogative: _____

7- gave / eating / I / The dog / the bone / was / it.

Affirmative: _____

Negative: _____

Interrogative: _____

PRACTICE

B- Complete the paragraph with the verbs in parentheses.

Last month I was _____ (travel) to Hawaii with my family and we didn't have a good time at a restaurant there.
We were _____ (have) breakfast and the waiter spilled some coffee on us when he was _____. (serve)
He wasn't _____ (pay) attention to what he was _____ (do).
So, we were really upset because we were _____ (go) downtown right after breakfast.

C – Answer the questions according to the text above:

1- Where were Jack and his family last month?

2- Were they having dinner at the restaurant? _____

3- Where were they going after eating? _____

4- What did the waiter spill on them? _____

5- Were they happy with the waiter? _____

D – Complete the sentences below with the past continuous of the verbs given:

1- John and Bob _____ (tell) their friends a funny story about their trip.

2- I _____ (do) the laundry when my phone rang.

3- Susie _____ (listen) to music last night.

4- My friend and I _____ (have) dinner at home when the lights went off.

5- The cops _____ (run) after the thieves who robbed a bank



E – Answer the questions below about your own information.

1- What were you doing at this time yesterday?

2- Where were your parents living before they got married?

3- Where were you traveling to on your last vacation?



LESSON 07

THERE TOBE–PRESENT SIMPLE

Verbs (Expression)

There is
There are

Verbs

Há, tem, existe
Há, tem, existem

Practicing

There is a car on the street.
There are cars on the street.
There is a man walking his dog.
There are two men walking their dogs.
There is something I need to tell you.
There are some things I need to tell you.
There is a book in the box.
There are books in the box.
There is one student in the classroom.
There are thirty students in the classroom.
There's some milk in the fridge.
There are many people working today.

Praticando

Há um carro na rua.
Há carros na rua.
Tem um homem passeando com seu cachorro.
Há dois homens passeando com seus cachorros.
Há algo que preciso te dizer.
Há algumas coisas que preciso te dizer.
Há um livro na caixa.
Há livros na caixa.
Tem um aluno na sala de aula.
Há trinta alunos na sala de aula.
Há leite na geladeira.
Há muitas pessoas trabalhando hoje.

Negative

There isn't a car on the street.

There aren't cars on the street.
There isn't anyone in the park.
There aren't twenty-five players on the field.
There is nothing to tell you.
There aren't enough people to help.
There's not a book in the box.
There aren't books in the box.

Negativo

Não há um carro na rua.
Não há carros na rua.
Não há ninguém no parque.
Não tem vinte e cinco jogadores no campo.
Não há nada pra te dizer.
Não tem pessoas o suficiente para ajudar.
Não tem um livro na caixa.
Não tem livros na caixa.

Interrogative

Is there a car on the street?
Are there cars on the street?
Is there anyone in the park?
Are there twenty-five players on the field?
Is there any chance of winning?
Are there enough people to help?
Is there a book in the box?
Are there books in the box?

Interrogativo

Há um carro na rua?
Há carros na rua?
Tem alguém no parque?
Tem vinte e cinco jogadores no campo?
Há alguma chance de ganhar?
Tem pessoas o suficiente para ajudar?
Existe um livro na caixa?
Tem livros na caixa?

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

Bob – Hey, Jack. I'm feeling like watching a movie. Is there a good one on TV?

Jack – Yes, there is. There is a nice action movie playing tonight.

Bob – Nice. Let's then order some food and watch the movie. Are there any nice places to order good sandwiches around here?

Jack – Yes, there are. Actually, there is a nice one right across the street. I have a friend who works there.

Bob – Awesome. Is there a menu so that I can choose the food?

Jack – Yes, there is. I'm calling my friend right now to ask for the menu.



Conversation 2

Bella – Claire, what is there to do in your city?

Claire – Well, there are many places to go. There is a mall, a theater, a park, there are a few clubs, but there aren't any nightlife bars.

Bella – That's fantastic. I'll love it. Are there places to work out?

Claire – Yes, there are many gyms in the city. But there aren't any gyms around my house.

Bella – That's ok. We can walk to the gym.

Claire – Sounds like fun to me.



Common mistakes with there is and there are

When we are talking about things or people that exist or we see in a place we don't use the verb "have". E.g:

Have a person in the living room.* (Tem uma pessoa na sala de estar). – **Wrong

There's a person in the living room. (Tem uma pessoa na sala de estar). – **Correct**

The verb "have", as a main verb, is used to indicate possession only. It can also be used as an auxiliary verb for the perfect verb tenses.

Another mistake even native speakers make is about the wrong subject-verb agreement when it comes to number and quantifiers. E.g:

There's a lot of people at the mall.* (Há muitas pessoas no shopping). – **Wrong

There are a lot of people at the mall. (Há muitas pessoas no shopping). – **Correct**

Now, write five sentences with **there is** and **there are** about things you see around you:

1-

2-

3-

4-

5-

PRACTICE

A – Translate the sentences below into the affirmative, negative and interrogative forms.

1- Há muita poluição nas cidades grandes.

Affirmative: _____

Negative: _____

Interrogative: _____



2- Tem um clube novo que podemos ir aos finais de semana.

Affirmative: _____

Negative: _____

Interrogative: _____

3- Tem alguém aqui para me ajudar a descarregar a mercadoria.

Affirmative: _____

Negative: _____

Interrogative: _____



4- Tem dois homens estranhos do lado de fora da loja.

Affirmative: _____

Negative: _____

Interrogative: _____

5- Tem uma prateleira bonita no quarto.

Affirmative: _____

Negative: _____

Interrogative: _____

6- Tem um cinema moderno nesta cidade.

Affirmative: _____

Negative: _____

Interrogative: _____

7- Há vinte e cinco estudantes de inglês para fazer a prova.

Affirmative: _____

Negative: _____

Interrogative: _____

PRACTICE

B- Complete this conversation at a hotel with **there is, there are, there isn't** e **there aren't**.

Tourist - Excuse me, _____ an ATM machine around here?

Concierge - Yes, _____ one right across from the drugstore. Go straight down the street for about two blocks and then turn left on Oak Rd. You will see it on your right hand side.

Tourist - Ok, and _____ good restaurants near the hotel? We're hungry and need to find a place to eat.

Concierge - Yes, _____ many of them. Take a look at these menus here and _____ the address for each one of them.

Tourist - Perfect, I really appreciate it. And one last question. _____ a grocery store on this street?

Concierge - No, _____. Actually, _____ no grocery stores in this neighborhood. You'll have to go downtown to find one.

C - Choose the right alternative for the sentences below:

1- _____ many people at the newstand to get the new sport magazine.

a) There is b) There c) There are

2- _____ a group of workers willing to go on strike due to low-wage jobs.

a) There b) There are c) There is

3- _____ a lost dog wandering on the street for hours.

a) Have b) There is c) There are

b) 4- How many people _____ at the party?

a) Is there b) have c) are there

4- _____ any food left in the fridge. We need to go grocery shopping.

a) There aren't b) There isn't c) There have



D - Look at the picture and write sentences about what you see using there is and there are.

1) _____

2) _____

3) _____

4) _____

5) _____

6) _____

7) _____



LESSON 08

THERE TO BE - PAST

Verbs (Expression)

There was

There were

Verbos (Expressão)

Havia, tinha, existia

Havia, tinha, existiam

Praticando

There was someone in the office.
There were many people at the mall.
There was a dog to be adopted.
There were two men fixing the car.
There was something I needed to tell you.
There were forty-five students in class.
There was a book in the box.
There were thirty-eight books in the box.
There was only one car to be sold.
There were some fruits left.
There was some milk in the fridge.
There were 2 vacancies until yesterday.
There was only one option.
There were some options for you.
There was a cat on the couch.

Praticando

Havia alguém no escritório.
Havia muitas pessoas no shopping.
Tinha um cachorro para ser adotado.
Havia dois homens consertando o carro.
Havia algo que eu tinha para te contar.
Havia quarenta e cinco estudantes na aula.
Tinha um livro na caixa.
Tinha trinta e oito livros na caixa.
Havia apenas um carro para ser vendido.
Tinha algumas frutas sobrando.
Havia leite na geladeira.
Existiam duas vagas até ontem.
Existia apenas uma opção.
Tinha algumas opções para você.
Havia um gato no sofá.

Negative

There wasn't anyone in the office.
There weren't many people at the mall.
There wasn't a dog to be adopted.
There weren't two men fixing the car.
There was nothing I needed to tell you.
There weren't forty-five students in class.
There wasn't a book in the box.
There weren't thirty-eight books in the box.

Negative

Não havia ninguém no escritório.
Não tinha muitas pessoas no shopping.
Não havia um cachorro para ser adotado.
Não tinha dois homens consertando o carro.
Não tinha nada para eu te contar..
Não havia quarenta e cinco estudantes na aula.
Não existia um livro na caixa.
Não havia trinta e oito livros na caixa.

Interrogative

Was there a car on the street?
Were there cars on the street?
Was there anyone in the park?
Were there twenty-five players on the field?
Was there any chance of winning?
Were there enough people to help?
Was there a book in the box?
Were there books in the box?

Interrogativo

Havia um carro na rua?
Tinha carros na rua?
Havia alguém no parque?
Havia vinte e cinco jogadores no campo?
Existe alguma chance de vencer?
Tinha pessoas o suficiente para ajudar?
Existia um livro na caixa? Tinha
livros na caixa?

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

Ray – How's it going, Larry? What did you do yesterday?

Larry – Hey, Ray. I drove to the beach. There was a rock concert there yesterday.

Ray – Wow, that's so cool. Were there many people at the concert?

Larry – Oh yeah, there were about two thousand people there. I think it was because there was a new band playing their new rock style.

Ray – I don't believe I missed this show, I love rock music.

Larry – How about you? Why weren't you able to go?

Ray – Well, there were some relatives over.



Conversation 2

Bella – Claire, what was there to do in Boston?

Claire – Well, there were many places to go. There was this incredible mall we went to and we shopped till we dropped. There were also many fun places to go.

Bella – What a shame I didn't go there with you. Were there places to enjoy nature?

Claire – Sure there were. They care a lot about green so, there was Much green to see.

Bella – One last thing. Were there many foreigners where you stayed?

Claire – Yep, there were many of them. Boston is a touristic city here many people go to.



Reading comprehension and culture.

Have you seen the movie "Titanic"? Have you ever wondered what was actually there on it?

We investigated and found that there were many lifeboats but there were 2000 passengers when it sailed from Southampton, so definitely there weren't enough boats for everybody.

Of course there was an enormous difference between the traveling conditions among the classes of passengers. For example, in first and second class there was a varied library, where there were many tables where passengers wrote letters to their families, or sit comfortably to read or write on their diaries. For men, there was a nice barbershop; there was also a dark room with all the materials to develop photos, because photography was a very new hobby. There was a gymnasium and a swimming pool with saltwater too. If passengers wanted to relax, they could go to the deck, where there were a lot of chairs to lie down and rest. Onboard, there were hundreds of men who liked to gamble and, of course, there were a lot of them playing cards or board games. Maybe some of them would go and smoke a cigar since there was also a smoking room on the ship. There was even a newspaper on board "The Atlantic Daily Bulletin". All the entertainment was there only for first and second class passengers, the ones in third class had to invent it by themselves. There were songs and some dancing.

There were a lot of pets traveling with their owners. There were nine dogs, four hens and roosters, 30 cockerels, one yellow canary and the ship's cat named Jenny. Five of the dogs stayed with their owners in their cabins. After the Titanic went down, only three dogs and a canary survived the sinking.

Adapted text from BBC (2004) Life a board [electronic document]. Last retrieved on September 15th, 2016 from <https://www.bbc.co.uk/southampton/features/titanic/onboard1.shtml>
Extracted from: https://avi.cuaed.unam.mx/repositorio/moodle/pluginfile.php/49/mod_resource/content/32/contenido/index.html

PRACTICE

A – Translate the sentences below into affirmative, negative and interrogative forms.

1. Havia 15 funcionários de férias.

Affirmative: _____

Negative: _____

Interrogative: _____

2. Tinha muitas lojas de roupas naquele shopping.

Affirmative: _____

Negative: _____

Interrogative: _____

3. Havia um grande supermercado neste bairro.

Affirmative: _____

Negative: _____

Interrogative: _____

4. Existiam diferentes formas de viajar no passado.

Affirmative: _____

Negative: _____

Interrogative: _____

5. Tinha duas pessoas procurando por você.

Affirmative: _____

Negative: _____

Interrogative: _____

6. Havia um grande lago aqui antes da cidade ser construída..

Affirmative: _____

Negative: _____

Interrogative: _____

7 – Existiam várias provas sobre conspirações na segunda guerra mundial..

Affirmative: _____

Negative: _____

Interrogative: _____

PRACTICE

B- Complete this conversation with **there was**, **there were**, **there wasn't** e **there weren't**.

A – Hi Vic. How was your trip to the USA?

B – It was pretty nice Josh. But when I got to the hotel I was thirsty but _____ any bottle of water at the front desk.

A – I don't believe it!! _____ a vending machine at the lobby?

B – Yes, _____. But _____ many people working at that day so _____ anyone to fill the empty slots of the machine.

A – Well, it's a hotel so They need to have more people available to work. I'm sure _____ other people dealing with the same problem you had.

B – Yes, _____ many others complaining about the service and some of them were complaining because _____ all the items offered on their website.

C – Choose the right alternative for the sentences below:

1- _____ many people at the newstand to get the morning newspaper.

a) There was b) There c) There were

2- _____ a group of _____ workers willing to go on strike due to low-wage jobs.

a) There is b) There were c) There was

3- _____ alost dog wandering on the street for hours.

a) Have b) There was c) There were

4- How many people _____ at the party?

a) was there b) Hadc) were there

5- _____ any food left in the fridge. We had to go grocery shopping.

a) There weren't b) There had c) There wasn't



D – Now, tell us about things there were and there weren't at a hotel you stayed recently.

- 1) _____
- 2) _____
- 3) _____
- 4) _____
- 5) _____
- 6) _____
- 7) _____



LESSON 09

CAUSATIVE VERBS

Verbs

To let
To make
To help
To have
To get
To want
To ask
To tell

Verbs (Expressão)

Deixar / Permitir
Fazer / Obrigar
Ajudar
Ter
Fazer / Obrigar / Conseguir
Querer
Pedir / Perguntar
Contar / Dizer / Falar

Praticando

I usually let my children stay out late.
She always makes them do the dishes.
They have their hair cut by the barber.
He gets his children to help him with his tasks.
My wife is always telling me to quit smoking.
My parents want me to study law.
They need to ask me to go to the bank for them.
My children help me clean the house.
They help him to wash the car.
He asked his friend to help him.
We told them to stop drinking when driving.

Negative

They don't have their hair cut by the barber.
He doesn't get his children to help him with his tasks.
My parents don't want me to study law.
They don't need to ask me to go to the bank for them.
My children don't help me clean the house.
They don't help him to wash the car.
He didn't ask his friend to help him.
We didn't tell them to stop drinking when driving.
You don't make your children study hard.

Interrogative

Do they have their hair cut at the barber?
Does he get his children to help him with his tasks?
Do my parents want me to study law?
Do they need to ask me to go to the bank for them?
Do my children help me clean the house?
Do they help him to wash the car?
Did he ask his friend to help him?
Did we tell them to stop drinking when driving?
Do you make your children study hard?

Praticando

Geralmente deixo meus filhos ficarem fora até tarde.
Ela sempre os faz lavar as louças.
Eles cortam o cabelo deles na barbearia.
Ele faz com que seus filhos o ajudem com as tarefas dele.
Minha esposa está sempre me dizendo para parar de fumar.
Meus pais querem que eu faça faculdade de direito.
Eles precisam me pedir para ir ao banco para eles.
Meus filhos me ajudam a limpar a casa.
Eles o ajudam a lavar o carro.
Ele pediu aos seus amigos para ajudá-lo.
Falamos para ele parar de beber quando estiver dirigindo.

Negativo

Eles não cortam o cabelo deles na barbearia.
Ele não faz com que seus filhos o ajudem com as tarefas dele.
Meus pais não querem que eu faça faculdade de direito.
Eles não precisam me pedir para ir ao banco para eles.
Meus filhos não me ajudam a limpar a casa.
Eles não o ajudam a lavar o carro.
Ele não pediu aos seus amigos para ajudá-lo.
Não falamos para ele parar de beber quando estiver dirigindo.
Você não faz seus filhos estudarem bastante.

Interrogativo

Eles cortam o cabelo deles na barbearia?
Ele faz com seus filhos o ajudem com as tarefas dele?
Meus pais querem que eu faça faculdade de direito?
Eles precisam me pedir para ir ao banco para eles?
Meus filhos me ajudam a limpar a casa?
Eles o ajudam a lavar o carro?
Ele pediu aos seus amigos para ajudar ele?
Falamos para ele parar de beber quando estiver dirigindo?
Você faz seus filhos estudarem bastante?

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

Ray – Yesterday was a hard day for me at school.

Larry – My mom made me help her with the chores.

Ray – Oh, don't say that! My parents are always asking me to do the chores.

Larry – And then, they didn't let me go to the manicure to get my nails done.

Ray – Are you kidding? We have to get our nails done because we're going to the party on Friday. I'll try to have the manicure come over.

Larry – That'd be fantastic.

Ray – By the way, let me use your phone to ask them to come.



Conversation 2

Bella – Claire, why didn't you call me last night?

Claire – I'm sorry, Bella. My boss asked me to work overtime and I didn't get the chance to make a phone call to you.

Bella – Oh, I understand. Why did he ask you to stay late?

Claire – Because some of our customers told him if we don't deliver the project on time, They will have to get another company to supply them.

Bella – Well, They're really tough to deal with.

Claire – Yes, and then they wanted me to help them accomplish the job well.



Read the statements below and circle the causative verbs presented.

1. My parents have their own company. You know, They sell all different kinds of bottled water. And they want me to get involved in that and be part of it. Like, my mom wants me to learn more about bottled water and everything. I'm not really into it but... mom says she'll teach me all about it when I finish college. She really wants me to work with her.
2. I'm an engineering student. School's good, but it's pretty difficult, you know? I mean, I have classes and then I work part-time too, so I never seem to have much time for anything else. My parents are always complaining because they don't see me very often. I mean, they get me to go home for every holiday, but they also want us to talk more on the phone, like once a week, too.
3. I really have to do some thinking about what I'm going to do with my life. You see, I want to see the world before I get a real job. I've never get the chance to go anywhere. But my parents always let me make my own decisions, like they didn't make me go to college or anything. The only thing they worry about is that I won't find someone and they won't have grandchildren, you know, that I'll never settle down and have children. They're always telling me to think about the future.
4. My parentes are trying to get me to go back to Toronto – they really want me to be closer to them. They're getting older, you know, and they don't want me to live so far away. When I visit them, They have me fix things around the house and help out. So yeah, it'd be good to be like an hour's drive from them or something. I told my mom I was thinking of moving, and she said, "Oh great. I'll help you find a nice apartment near here." And I said, "Mom, I don't mean I'm going to be your neighbor!".
5. I'm in a rock band, you know. I play the drums. We perform almost every weekend at clubs around town. It's fun! My parents are Ok with it.... After all, they paid for my music lessons When I was a kid, and made me practice, too! But they don't like how I look, I mean, my clothes, and long hair and everything. They just don't think I dress well, so they're Always trying to get me to change the way I look.

PRACT ICE

A – Translate the sentences below into affirmative, negative and interrogative forms.

1. Meus pais não permitem que eu fique fora até tarde.

Affirmative: _____

Negative: _____

Interrogative: _____

2. Eles me fazem voltar para casa às 10h00.

Affirmative: _____

Negative: _____

Interrogative: _____

3. Rebecca faz seus filhos limparem a casa todos os dias.

Affirmative: _____

Negative: _____

Interrogative: _____

4. Quero estudar direito, mas meus pais querem que eu faça engenharia.

Affirmative: _____

Negative: _____

Interrogative: _____

5. Meu irmão não permite que eu fique com o controle remoto.

Affirmative: _____

Negative: _____

Interrogative: _____

6. Minha esposa vive me pedindo para dirigir mais devagar.

Affirmative: _____

Negative: _____

Interrogative: _____

7 – Minha mãe não conseguiu me fazer comer os vegetais.

Affirmative: _____

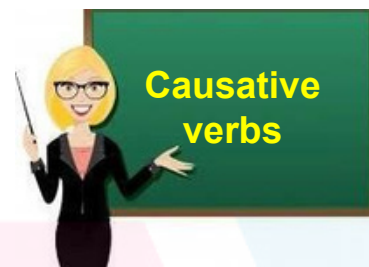
Negative: _____

Interrogative: _____

PRACTICE

B- Choose the correct verbs to complete the sentences.

1. When I was a young boy, my brothers _____ me walk downtown by myself. **(got / let)**
2. My mom always made me _____ to bed early. **(go / to go)**
3. My mother couldn't _____ me to eat vegetables. I was a picky eater! **(make / get)**
4. My cousin never lets me _____ his cell phone. **(use / to use)**
5. My parents _____ me to spend more time with them. **(want / have)**



C – Match the first column to the second column:

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| 1 My teacher asks me | do the chores of the house. |
| 2 I sometimes help my mother | to do my homework. |
| 3 Jeff had his brother and cousin | help him with his homework. |
| 4 Barbara always tells others | to do the dishes after dinner. |
| 5 I don't like When my mother makes me | to try new things. |

D – Complete the sentences with your own information:

- 1) My boss wants me to _____
- 2) My wife often asks me _____
- 3) The teacher sometimes has us _____
- 4) I always tell my sister _____
- 5) I don't get my relatives _____
- 6) Grandparents should let their grandchildren _____
- 7) My neighbors sometimes help me _____
- 8) I can't get my co-workers _____
- 9) My children always have me _____
- 10) I'm Always telling my friends _____

In conversation people say "help + verb" 10 times more than "verb + to + verb"

LESSON 10 - QUARTER TEST II

READING COMPREHENSION

Bob's job.

When Bob was working as a cop, there was always something to deal with. His coworkers were asking him to have the reports done for the cases that they had. The crime rate was increasing in the city, which had more bank robbery cases at the time. Bob was getting worried about that, so he proposed hiring more cops to help them restore peace. The police chief was also planning to bring more cops to the Police Department but there was an issue to solve: the candidates for the selection had to be from the surrounding counties because the hiring limit in their county was reached. He got Bob to solve the problem, so now there is a selection process for the recruitment and there are many candidates already. There's also a fee that they have candidates pay to participate. There are 2 tests for those chosen, which are the written test and a physical test. Bob's request worked out the way that he thought



A- Answer the questions about the text above:

1- What was Bob working as?

2- What was the request from his coworkers?

3- ~~Which cases of robbery were increasing in the city?~~

4- What was the police chief planning to do?

5- Are there many candidates for the recruitment?

6- Are there any tests to be applied for the position?

B- Write down at least 4 sentences from the text which present causative verbs:

1- _____

2- _____

3- _____

4- _____

LESSON 11

QUANTIFIERS

Quantifiers

Much
Many
A lot of
A few
Few
A little
Little

Quantificadores

Muito / Muita
Muitos / Muitas
Muitos(as) / Muito(a)
Alguns / Algumas
Poucos / Poucas
Um pouco
Pouco / Pouca

Practicing

I have a lot of work to do today.
We have many friends at school.
There are a lot of workers at the construction.
She has a few friends who help her out.
Josh has few foreign friends.
They drank a little water yesterday.
They drank little water yesterday.

Praticando

Tenho muito trabalho para fazer hoje.
Temos muitos amigos na escola.
Há muitos trabalhadores na construção.
Ela tem alguns amigos que a ajudam.
Josh tem poucos amigos estrangeiros.
Eles beberam um pouco de água ontem.
Eles beberam pouca água ontem.

Negative

He doesn't have much money to go out.
I didn't have many tools to fix the car.
My parents don't buy a lot of things.
There is no much sugar on the cake.
She doesn't have many issues to solve.
I don't take many items when I go camping.
We don't have a lot of fruits in the fridge.
They don't have a lot of relatives abroad.
You don't have to make noise when cooking.

Negativo

Ele não tem muito dinheiro para sair.
Eu não tinha muitas ferramentas para consertar o carro.
Meus pais não compram muitas coisas.
Não há muito açúcar no bolo.
Ela não tem muitos problemas para solucionar.
Eu não levo muitos itens quando vou acampar.
Não temos muitas frutas na geladeira.
Eles não têm muitos parentes no exterior.
Você não tem que fazer barulho quando estiver cozinhando.

Interrogative

How much water do you drink every day?
How many glasses of water do you drink every day?
How many siblings do you have?
How much money do you need?
How many people were there at the party?
How much pollution can a car emit?
How much time do you need for the test?
How many students are there in your class?
How many English books do you have?

Interrogativo

Quanta água você bebe todos os dias?
Quantos copos de água você bebe todos os dias?
Quantos irmãos você tem?
Quanto dinheiro você precisa?
Quantas pessoas havia na festa?
Quanta poluição um carro consegue emitir?
Quanto tempo você precisa para a prova?
Quantos estudantes tem na sua sala?
Quantos livros de inglês você tem?

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

- Michael** – Nathan, I didn't buy much milk this week, can you get me some if you have?
- Nathan** – Sorry, Michael, I have little milk in the fridge.
- Michael** – That's ok. I need to go to the grocery shop to get a few things, anyway.
- Nathan** – As you're going grocery shopping, do you mind buying some more milk for me?
- Michael** – Sure, I don't mind it at all. I have a lot of time today and I can also get a few more things if you need.
- Nathan** – Oh, I appreciate Michael, but I have little money on me, so let's stick to the plan.
- Michael** – Ok then. But if you change your mind, give me a call.



Conversation 2

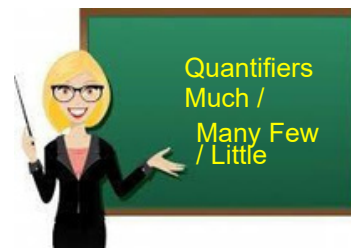
- Sarah** – Peter, how many bottles of wine do you have in your house?
- Peter** – I have a few bottles left from the last party we had. Do you need some?
- Sarah** – Yeah, I don't have much wine here. I have only a few bottles.
- Peter** – Last time I went to the liquor store I bought a lot of wine because I use a little wine on my recipes, so I always need to have some wine in the fridge.
- Sarah** – That's something I need to have in mind. I never buy enough.
- Peter** – By the way, how much is enough for you? Try to get many bottles at the next time you go shopping.



Some other quantifiers that you can use with countable and uncountable nouns:

some		more	a lot of	enough
no	any	most	lots of	less

- I have to talk to all of them to make sure they understand what I'm saying.
- I have no money at all to buy what I need.
- There are some people waiting for me at the office.
- Do you have any children? I don't have any.
- People need to have more friends in their lives.
- The child has to drink more milk.



A FEW = Poucos/Poucas/Alguns; Funciona na ideia de que é pouco, porém aceitável. (Para contáveis)



A LITTLE = Pouco/Pouca; Funciona na ideia de que é pouco, porém aceitável. (Para incontáveis)

FEW = Poucos/Poucas; insuficiente; poderiam ser mais. (Para contáveis)



LITTLE = Pouco/Pouca; insuficiente; poderia ser mais. (Para incontáveis)

PRACTICE

A – Complete the sentences with the correct quantifiers:

1- I don't have _____ money to buy that house. I have only half of it.

- a) much b) many c) a few d) enough

2- She has _____ pair of shoes in her closet. Now she wants to give some away.

- a) a little b) much c) enough d) many

3- David is buying _____ milk for the cats and he shouldn't.

- a) much b) a little c) many d) few

4- I only have _____ time to spend with my family on the weekends

- a) a lot of b) few c) little d) much

5- Is there _____ unemployment in your city?

- a) much b) some c) a few d) many

B- Complete the paragraph with the words given in the box.

most	few a few	much
little	enough enough	some

Few years ago, I went to a county in the state of New Hampshire and I noticed that very people were wearing heavy clothes in the winter. There was _____ snow all over the place and _____ people didn't feel the cold. I was astonished by it. So, I went to a clothing store to buy _____ extra clothes and

I saw a small kid looking at the jackets, but seeming to have _____ money. I got close to him and I asked if he had _____ money to buy a jacket and he sadly said he didn't. Well, I had _____ money to buy my clothes and also his. Then, I bought him a jacket and I asked him to choose _____ pairs of socks. He was so happy at that moment.

PRACTICE

C- Translate the sentences below:

1-Não tem muito leite na geladeira.

2-Às vezes bebo pouca água porque não tenho tempo de parar.

3-Temos um pouco de tempo sobrando. Vamos tomar um café.

4-Você ainda tem algumas coisas para fazer, deve trabalhar hora extra.

5-Muitas pessoas estão trabalhando de casa este ano.

6-Poucos trabalhadores estão indo para o escritório para trabalhar.

7-Há muitas frutas na fruteira. Leve algumas para a escola.

8- Quanto dinheiro você precisa para viajar pelo mundo?

9-Quantas cidades há em seu estado?

10-Eu preciso de um pouco de descanso.

D – Now it's your turn to make sentences with the quantifiers learned:

1 - _____

2 - _____

3 - _____

4 - _____

5 - _____

6 - _____

7 - _____

LESSON 12

WILL– SIMPLE FUTURE

Verbs

I will study.
You will play.
She will go.
He will travel.
It will fall.
We will learn.
They will run.

Practicing

I'll travel to the USA next year.
We'll go to the stadium on Sunday.
He will buy a new car when he gets the money. She'll go to the club with her friends.
Dan will play checkers with his dad.
They'll need another job.

Negative

He will not be able to work tomorrow.
I won't drive to work today.
She won't graduate if she keeps missing classes. There won't be a party for us.
They won't play soccer this weekend.
You won't play video games if you don't do your chores. We won't go to the restaurant this month.
It won't work properly without maintenance.
We will not do it without your permission.

Interrogative

Will you buy me a snack? I'm hungry.
Will she learn English at Aliança América?
Will we do the job with the other workers?
Will the school be open on holidays?
Will they bring me the items I asked for? Will you lend me some money?
Will you pay me back in 10 days?
Will he ask her to marry him?
Will she accept his apologies?

Verbs

Eu estudarei.
Você brincará.
Ela irá.
Ele viajará.
Cairá.
Nós aprenderemos.
Eles(as) correrão.

Praticando

Viajarei para os EUA no próximo ano.
Nós iremos ao estádio no domingo.
Ele comprará um carro novo quando conseguir o dinheiro.
Ela irá para o clube com os amigos dela.
Dan jogará damas com o pai dele.
Eles precisarão de outro trabalho.

Negativo

Ele não conseguirá trabalhar amanhã.
Não dirigirei para o trabalho hoje.
Ela não se formará se continuar faltando a aulas.
Não haverá uma festa para nós.
Eles não jogarão futebol neste final de semana.
Você não jogará video game se não fizer seus serviços de casa.
Não iremos ao restaurante este mês.
Não funcionará apropriadamente sem manutenção.
Não faremos isso sem sua permissão.

Interrogativo

Você vai comprar um lanche pra mim? Estou com fome.
Ela aprenderá inglês na Aliança América?
Faremos o trabalho com os outros trabalhadores?
A escola estará aberta nos feriados?
Eles me trarão os itens que solicitei?
Você me emprestará algum dinheiro?
Você me pagará de volta em 10 dias?
Ele a pedirá para casar com ele?
Ela aceitará os pedidos de desculpas dele?

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

Greg– Hello, Paul, I have a challenge for you. Will you accept it?
Paul - Yes, I will. I'll never run from a challenge. What is it?
Greg - It's a tongue twister. Let's do it?
Paul - Oh yeah! Which one will it be?
Greg - It will be the one about the word 'can'. You'll have to say it fast!
Paul - Sounds good. Will you do it first to show me how it is?
Greg - Sure I will. Can you can a can as a canner can can a can?
Paul - I won't do it the way you said. I'll do it like this...



Conversation 2

Sarah – Peter, I won't be able to work tomorrow because I'll have to go to the doctor.
Peter – Ok, Sarah. What's wrong? Are you feeling sick?
Sarah – Not really. He will just run some exams to make sure my health is fine.
Peter – I understand. Will you need someone to cover for you while you're off?
Sarah – No, I won't. I anticipated some tasks this morning.
Peter – Thank goodness. Well, I definitely hope everything goes ok with your exams.
 One last question: will you bring me a medical statement so I don't have to deduct the day from your payment?
Sarah – Yes, I will. Don't worry.



Remember: there's no variation when conjugating "will" with the different subjects:

I will	I'll	I will not	I'll not	I won't	Will I?
You will	You'll	You will not	You'll not	You won't	Will you?
He will	He'll	He will not	He'll not	He won't	Will he?
She will	She'll	She will not	She'll not	She won't	Will she?
It will	It'll	It will not	It'll not	It won't	Will it?
We will	We'll	We will not	We'll not	We won't	Will we?
They will	They'll	They will not	They'll not	They won't	Will they?

FUN FACT

The following sentence is grammatically correct in the English language:

Will, will Will will Will Will's will?

Will (a person), will (future tense helping verb) Will (a second person) will (bequeath) [to] Will (a third person) Will's (the second person) will (a document)?(Someone directly asked Will 1 if Will 2 plans to bequeath his own will, the document, to Will 3.)

PRACTICE

A – Rewrite the sentences using the simple future auxiliary “will”.

1- Susie goes to the movies on Sunday.

2- They work every Friday from now on.

3- Peter buys a house for his mom and dad.

4- I lend some money to my siblings.

5- She uses her husband’s car to go to work.

B- Correct the mistakes in the sentences below:

1- Jeff will travels to the USA with his family.

2- Do you will work for this company next year?

3- We wills buy a new car because ours is getting old.

4- Jane and Mary will sell all the crop of this season to Europe?

5- According to the weather forecast, it’s will rain tomorrow.

C- Write sentences about your future using the auxiliary 'will':

1-

2-

3-

4-

5-

PRACTICE

D- Translate the sentences below:

1- Buscarei minhas filhas no colégio depois do trabalho.

2- Irei ao supermercado para comprar mantimentos e comprar uma nova mesa.

3- Viajarei para Paris no ano que vem.

4- Você ajudará sua mãe com os serviços de casa este final de semana?

5- No próximo ano eu vou me formar e depois vou fazer uma grande festa.

6-Algumas pessoas irão trabalhar na obra aos domingos.

7-Ela vai visitar sua irmã no Reino Unido.

8- A vacina vai salvar toda a população mundial?

9- Se você não for devagar, você causará um acidente.

10- Dormirei cedo hoje, pois tenho que acordar cedo para estudar para a prova

E – Change the sentences into the negative and interrogative forms:

1. I will work out at the gym.

Neg: _____

Int: _____

2-The president will give a speech at the White House Conference Center.

Neg: _____

Int: _____

3- I'll be at the office tomorrow morning.

Neg: _____

Int: _____

LESSON 13

SIMPLE FUTURE “BE GOING TO”

Expression

To be going to

Practicing

I'm going to drink some coffee.
He is going to play soccer on weekends.
The manager is going to fire the worker.
They are going to go to the party.
My parents are going to buy me a new car.
We are going to learn more at Aliança.
We are going to drive to work.
She is going to go out with her friends.
It is going to appear in the sky.
You're going to sell all the stocks.

Negative

He isn't going to work tomorrow.
I'm not going to the party with you.
She isn't going to travel next month.
They aren't going to keep the job.
We aren't going to study law.
He isn't going to visit his relatives in New York.
They aren't going to accept the rules.
It isn't going to be cold tonight.
You're not going to work with this system.
She's not going to be part of the team.
You're not going to go bowling today.

Interrogative

Are you going to study French with me?
Is he going to go to the movies this weekend?
Are they going to write the reports today?
Is he going to eat the soup I made?
Is she going to become the president next election?
Is it going to rain more this year?
Are we going to get a nice gift?
Are you going to get your hair done?
Is she going to go to the mall alone?

Expressão

Expressão auxiliar do futuro.

Praticando

Vou beber um pouco de café.
Ele vai jogar futebol aos finais de semana.
O gerente vai demitir o trabalhador.
Ele vão ir à festa.
Meu pai irão me comprar um carro novo.
Nós iremos aprender mais na Aliança.
Nós iremos dirigir para o trabalho.
Ela irá sair com os amigos dela.
Vai aparecer no céu.
Vocês irão vender todas as ações.

Negativo

Ele não irá trabalhar amanhã.
Não irei para a festa com você.
Ela não irá viajar no próximo mês.
Eles não vão manter o emprego.
Nós não estudaremos direito.
Ele não visitará seus parentes em Nova Iorque.
Eles não vão aceitar as regras.
Não será frio hoje à noite.
Você não irá trabalhar com esse sistema.
Ela não fará parte do time.
Você não irá jogar boliche hoje.

Interrogativo

Você vai estudar francês comigo?
Ele irá ao cinema esse final de semana?
Eles irão escrever os relatórios hoje?
Ele irá comer a sopa que eu fiz?
Ela irá se tornar a presidente na próxima eleição?
Choverá mais este ano?
Nós iremos receber um presente legal?
Você irá arrumar o cabelo?
Ela irá ao shopping sozinha?

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

Greg - What's up, Paul? Are you going to watch the game tonight?

Paul - No much, Greg. Sorry buddy, I'm not. I'm going to study for an English test tomorrow.

Greg - Are you kidding? The Dragons are going to play. That's going to be the game of the year!

Paul - I know. It's a pity, I'm going to miss it, but the test is important.

Greg - Yes, dude! I'm going to study as well, but only after the game.

Paul - Aren't you going to call Mat and Doug to watch it with you?

Greg - No, I'm not. I think I'm also going to study for the test.

Paul - Great! We are going to ace it!



Conversation 2

Sarah - How are you, Peter?

Peter - I'm pretty good, Sarah. How about you?

Sarah - I'm fine, as well. Peter, are you going to send the goods on the next vessel?

Peter - Yes, I am, Sarah. All the shipments are going to be loaded on the next vessel.

Sarah - Ok, thank you! One more thing: are you going to send the invoices and the packing list with the shipments or by mail?

Peter - I'm going to send them by air so you can receive them fast.

Sarah - Thank you for your cooperation.



Reading comprehension:

Daisy is a very busy woman. Tomorrow she is going to wake up very early because she has a doctor's appointment at 07 o'clock. After the appointment, she is going to run to her office to schedule some meetings with her customers. She is also going to try to close a very profitable deal with a company she has been dealing with for a while. At noon, she is going to pick up her children at school and take them home to have lunch. Then, she is going to go back to her office to make some phone calls and prepare everything for the next day. After work, she is going to take her kids to an amusement park settled near her house, and she promised them that she is going together on the rides; They are definitely going to have a lot of fun!

Answer the questions according to the text above. Give full answers.

1- Where is Daisy going to go very early in the morning?

2- What is she going to do in her office right after she gets there?

3- What time is she going to pick her kids up?

4- What is she going to do after lunch?

5- Where is she going to take her kids after work?



PRACTICE

A – Rewrite the sentences in the simple future using the expression 'going to'.

1 - Susie goes to the movies on Sunday.

2 - They work every Friday from now on.

3 - Peter buys a house for his mom and dad.

4 - I lend some money to my siblings.

5 - She uses her husband's car to go to work.

B- Correct the mistakes in the sentences below:

1- Jeff are going to travel to the USA with his family.

2- Do you are going to work for this company next year?

3- We is going to buy a new car because ours is getting old.

4- Jane and Mary will going to sell all the crop of this season to Europe?

5 -According to the weather forecast, it's going rains tomorrow.

C- Write sentences about your future using the expression BE GOING TO:

1-

2-

3-

4-

5-

PRACTICE

D- Translate the sentences below using the expression BE GOING TO:

1-Buscarei minhas filhas no colégio depois do trabalho.

2-Irei ao supermercado para comprar mantimentos e comprar uma nova mesa.

3-Viajarei para Paris no ano que vem.

4-Você ajudará sua mãe com os serviços de casa este final de semana?

5-No próximo ano eu vou me formar e depois vou fazer uma grande festa.

6-Algumas pessoas irão trabalhar na obra aos domingos.

7- Elavai visitar sua irmã no Reino Unido.

8-Avacina vai salvar toda a população mundial?

9-Se você não for mais devagar, você causará um acidente.

10-Dormirei cedo hoje, pois tenho que acordar cedo para estudar para a prova.

E – Change the sentences into the negative and interrogative forms:

I'm going to work out at the gym.

Neg:

Int:

The president is going to give a speech at the White House Conference Center.

Neg:

Int:

3- I'm going to be at the office tomorrow morning.

Neg:

Int:

LESSON 14

FUTURE CONTINUOUS

Verbs

Will be

Verbs

Estará

Practicing

I'll be reading a book at this time tomorrow.
He will be graduating by the next year.
The manager will be traveling by the time you get back.
They will be buying a house.
My parents will be celebrating their 25th anniversary.
We'll be speaking fluently by the end of the course.
You'll be driving home when I call.
She will be having a party at her house.
It'll be falling from the sky.
You'll be drinking hot chocolate.
They'll be opening a new business.
He'll be playing on a professional team.
The teacher will be applying the test.

Praticando

Eu estarei lendo um livro nesse horário amanhã.
Ele estará se formando até o próximo ano.
O gerente estará viajando quando você voltar.
Eles estarão comprando uma casa.
Meus pais estarão celebrando o 25º aniversário deles.
Estaremos falando fluentemente até o final do curso.
Você estará dirigindo de volta pra casa quando eu ligar.
Ela estará dando uma festa na casa dela.
Estará caindo do céu.
Você estará bebendo chocolate quente.
Eles estarão abrindo um novo negócio.
Ele estará jogando em um time profissional.
O professor estará aplicando a prova.

Negative

He won't be working tomorrow.
I won't be going to the party with you.
She won't be traveling next month.
They won't be talking to the boss.
We won't be playing at the club.
He won't be visiting his relatives in New York. They won't be getting good grades.
I hope it won't be raining when we go there.
You won't be getting a lot of work to do.
She won't be making part of the team.
You won't be bowling with your friends today.

Negativo

Ele não estará trabalhando amanhã.
Não estarei indo para a festa com você.
Ela não estará viajando no próximo mês.
Eles não estarão falando com o chefe.
Nós não estaremos tocando no clube.
Ele não estará visitando seus parentes em Nova Iorque.
Eles não estarão tirando boas notas.
Espero que não esteja chovendo quando formos lá.
Você não estará recebendo muito trabalho para fazer.
Ela não estará fazendo parte do time.
Você não estará jogando boliche com seus amigos hoje.

Interrogative

Will you be studying French with me?
Will he be going to the movies this weekend?
Will they be graduating by next year?
Will he be eating the soup I made?
Will she be working at the new company by next week?
Will it be raining more this year?
Will you be going to the new hairdresser?
Will she be going to the mall alone?

Interrogativo

Você estará estudando francês comigo?
Ele estará indo ao cinema esse final de semana?
Eles estarão se formando até o próximo ano?
Ele estará comendo a sopa que eu fiz?
Ela estará trabalhando na nova empresa até a próxima semana?
Estará chovendo mais este ano?
Você estará indo para a nova cabeleireira?
Ela estará indo ao shopping sozinha?

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

- Henry** -Hey Jason, I'll be needing some help moving tomorrow. What will you be doing?
Jason -Really, Henry? Are you moving? Well, I'll be running some errands for my dad.
Henry -Will you ask him if you can help me?
Jason -Absolutely! By the way, where will you be moving to?
Henry -I'll be moving to Foxborough.
Jason -Wow! So you'll be watching a lot of games at the National Stadium, right?
Henry -I don't know about that, Jason. I'm not really into sports, so let's see.
Jason -Don't worry. I'll be visiting you often and then I'll take you to a game.



Conversation 2

- Sarah** – Hello, Peter. How do you see yourself in 10 years? Will you be working at a multinational company?
Peter – I hope so, Sarah. I'm working hard to achieve this goal.
Sarah – You're on the right path. Keep on the great job!
Peter – How about you? What will be doing after you graduate?
Sarah – I'm planning to open my own business and then I'll be making a lot of money.
Peter – You go, girl!



Answer the questions below with your own information using the future continuous.
Give complete answers:

- 1- What do you think you'll be doing at this time next year?

- 2- Do you think you'll be living in the same house in twenty Years' time?

- 3- What kind of jobs do you think we will be having fifty years from now?

- 4- Do you think we will be eating the same kind of food twenty years from now?

- 5- What do you expect you will be doing this time tomorrow?

- 6- What will you be wearing to work tomorrow?

- 7- What will you be having for lunch on Sunday?

- 8- Where will you be traveling to on your next vacation?

- 9- Who will you be meeting with next week?

PRACTICE

A- Translate the sentences below using the future continuous tense:

1- Estarei buscando minhas filhas no colégio depois do trabalho.

2-Estarei indo ao supermercado para comprar mantimentos e comprar uma nova mesa.

3-Estarei viajando para Paris no ano que vem.

4-Você estará ajudando sua mãe com os serviços de casa este final de semana?

5-No próximo ano eu estarei me formando e depois vou fazer uma grande festa.

6-Algumas pessoas não estarão trabalhando no próximo feriado.

7- Ela estará visitando sua irmã no Reino Unido.

8- O governo estará vacinando todas as pessoas até o próximo mês?

9- Você não receberá um aumento até o próximo ano.

10- Estarei dormindo mais cedo hoje, pois tenho que acordar cedo para estudar para a prova.

B – Change the sentences into the negative and interrogative forms:

1I'll be working out at the gym.

Neg:

Int:

2The president will be giving a speech at the White House Conference Center.

Neg:

Int:

3I will be driving to the office tomorrow morning.

Neg:

Int:

LESSON 15 - QUARTER TEST III

A- Complete the sentences with the correct quantifiers:

- 1- Jason has _____ friends abroad.
a) much b) little c) many
- 2- I don't drink _____ water when I'm working.
a) many b) few c) much
- 3- There are _____ people unemployed due to the pandemic.
a) a little b) much c) a lot of
- 4- I don't have _____ money to buy this car.
a) lot of b) enough c) few
- 5- Only _____ students showed up for the class today.
a) a little b) a few c) many
- 6- We have to postpone the meeting, only _____ workers came.
a) few b) little c) many

B- Complete these sentences with 'how much' or 'how many':

- 1- _____ cheese do we have in the fridge?
- 2- _____ jelly do you usually put on your bread?
- 3- _____ slices of pizza can you eat?
- 4- _____ money do you have in your savings account?
- 5- _____ dollars do you need to travel to the USA?
- 6- _____ students are there in your class?
- 7- _____ time do you need to accomplish this task?
- 8- _____ water do you drink every day?
- 9- _____ bottles of water do you usually buy a week?
- 10- _____ siblings do you have?

C- Translate the sentences below:

1. Tenho poucos livros na estante. Preciso comprar mais.
2. Não tenho muito tempo para ir ao shopping.
3. Quantas pessoas foram infectadas com o vírus no Brasil?
4. Tem muitos carros estacionados aqui, não consigo contar.
5. Quanto tempo falta para acabar a prova?



LESSON 15

QUARTER TEST III

D- Write the sentences below with the simple future tense using the verbs in parentheses:

1 - I will go / am going to go to the movies with my family. (to go)

2 - She will work / is going to work at the office on the holiday. (to work)

3 - We will go / are going to go grocery shopping. The fridge is empty. (to go)

4 - Will you give / Are you going to give them a ride to work? (to give)

5 - We will have / are going to have to go to the bank to withdraw some money. (to have)

6 - It will rain / is going to rain all day long tomorrow. (to rain)

7 - He will finish / is going to finish the test before everybody else. (to finish)

8 - Will they be / Are they going to be home on the weekend? (to be)

9 - She will have / is going to have a nice birthday party. (to have)

10 - You will help / am going to help your homework before going to bed. (to finish)

E - Unscramble the sentences below:

1 - The / next month / you / going to / museum / are / visit / ?

2 - To / am / dentist / the / I / this / going / visit / afternoon / .

3 - Tomorrow / going to / with / aren't / they / friends / swim / their / .

4 - Buy / going to / you / a nice jacket / are / .

5 - Our house / going to / we / paint / are / this week / ?

F- Translate the sentences below:

1. Estarei indo para a Europa ano que vem.

2. Ele não estará mais trabalhando conosco a partir de amanhã.

3. Eles estarão participando de uma reunião a esta hora em dois dias.

4. Nós estaremos entregando todos os relatórios à noite.

5. Eu estarei dormindo quando eles chegarem.

LESSON 16

MODAL VERB - WOULD

Modal verb

Would

Praticando

I would study more.
I would like to do it.

I would travel.
They would go to the concert.
My parents would buy me a new laptop.
We would be busier.
You would drive to California.
She would live in London.
It would happen.
You'd sing happy birthday to all of us.
They'd buy a new costume for halloween.
He would like to try on these boots.
The teacher would apply another test.
The computer would turn itself off.

Negative

He wouldn't work tomorrow.
I wouldn't go out tonight.
She wouldn't do such a thing.
They wouldn't be able to do it.
There wouldn't be any food left in the fridge.
Your parents wouldn't approve that.
They wouldn't eat that.
I wouldn't pay that much for it.
We wouldn't type so fast.
She wouldn't like to sell the house.
You wouldn't go swimming on this weather.

Interrogative

Would you like a cup of coffee?
Would you learn a new language?
Would you play soccer on a professional team?
Would you cook something special tonight?
Would you take me to a dance?
Would it take too long to get there?
Would he prepare the reports on time?
Would she teach me how to ride a bike?
Would they run a marathon?

Verbo modal

Utilizado em frases condicionais e também para indicar ações costumeiras do passado.

Praticando

Eu estudaria mais.
Eu gostaria de fazer isso.
Eu viajaria.
Eles iriam ao show.
Meus pais me comprariam um novo notebook.
Nós estaríamos mais ocupados.
Você dirigiria para Califórnia.
Ela moraria em Londres.
Isso aconteceria.
Você cantaria feliz aniversário para todos nós.
Eles comprariam uma nova fantasia para o dia das bruxas.
Ele gostaria de experimentar estas botas.
A professora aplicaria uma outra prova.
O computador desligará sozinho.

Negativo

Ele não trabalharia amanhã.
Eu não sairia hoje à noite.
Ela não faria tal coisa.
Eles não seriam capazes de fazê-lo.
Não haverá nenhuma comida sobrando na geladeira.
Seus pais não aprovariam isso.
Eles não comeriam isso.
Eu não pagaria tanto por isso.
Nós não digitaríamos tão rápido.
Ela não gostaria de vender a casa.
Vocês não iriam nadar com esse tempo.

Interrogativo

Você gostaria de uma xícara de café?
Você aprenderia um novo idioma?
Você jogaria futebol em um time profissional?
Você cozinharía algo especial hoje à noite?
Você me levaria para um baile?
Levaria muito tempo para chegar lá?
Ele prepararia os relatórios dentro do prazo?
Ela me ensinaria a andar de bicicleta?
Eles correriam uma maratona?

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

David – Matt, would you do me a favor? My son needs to see the doctor tomorrow but I have a very important meeting. Would you take him there for me?

Matt –Yes, I would, David. You know you can count on me anytime.

David –I'd really appreciate it.

Matt –Don't worry. I would do anything to help you out. You're family to me.

David –I'd love to pay back the favor when you need it. Just let me know.

Matt –Oh David, don't even bother about that.

David –Would you and Susie come over on the weekend? I'll cook barbecue for us.

Matt –Yeah, we'd love to. Susie would be really happy, she hates cooking on weekends.

Conversation 2

Rose – Mary, would you call these customers for me? I'm really busy at the moment.

Mary – Yes, I would. What would you want me to tell them?

Rose – Tell them I'd like to analyze the offer they have. I'd choose the best one.

Mary – Ok. I'll do it right now, and after I'm done I'd like to leave earlier to buy some groceries.

Rose – Yes, sure! As you are going to buy groceries, would you buy me a pack of sugar and some bags of coffee to keep in the office?

Mary – Of course. I noticed we're out of crackers too, so I'll also buy them.

Rose – Sounds good. Thank you!

WOULD FOR PAST ACTIONS

We can use 'WOULD' to talk about repeated past actions that don't happen anymore.

Every time we went to grandmas', we would play in the backyard with her.

"Toda vez que íamos para a casa da vovó, brincávamos no quintal com ela."

My mom would always read a nice story for us before going to sleep.

"Minha mãe sempre lia uma história legal para nós antes de ir dormir."

My brother and I would ride a bike together when we were little.

"Meu irmão e eu andávamos de bicicleta juntos quando éramos pequenos."

We would have dinner with our relatives every Christmas.

"Jantávamos com nossos parentes todos os natais."



FUN WITH A TONGUE-TWISTER

Woodchuck

"How much wood would a woodchuck chuck if a woodchuck could chuck wood?"

He would chuck, he would, as much as he could, and chuck as much wood as a woodchuck would if a woodchuck could chuck wood."



PRACTICE

A- Translate the conditional sentences below using the modal verb 'WOULD'.

1- Nós cantaríamos na festa de despedida dele.

2- Eu ouviria esta música todos os dias.

3- Peter estaria preocupado com alguma coisa.

4- Quem seria a pessoa para me ajudar?

5- Quem o chefe escolheria para fazer a viagem ao exterior?

6- Algumas pessoas não fariam isso porque isso não é legal.

7- Nós não compraríamos esta casa nem por um dólar.

8- O time não venceria o campeonato.

9- O que você faria para conseguir o emprego dos sonhos?

10- Elas leriam todos os livros para aprender mais.

B – Change the sentences into the negative and interrogative forms:

1- They would shop for hours at that mall.

Neg:

Int:

2- I would make a nice drawing of the Mona Lisa.

Neg:

Int:

3- The dog would bite you if you got inside.

Neg:

Int:

PRACTICE

C- Change the sentences below to include the modal verb 'would':

1-She loves to go swimming on the weekends

2-He doesn't drive home fast every night after work.

3-We study English and French at university.

4-You help your mom run all errands after school.

5-Do you go to the movies with your family?

6-Does he play soccer in his free time?

7-What do you like to do on Fridays and Saturdays?

8-He never hurts his pets because he loves them.

9-The children love to play on the street.

10-It takes my kids to work once in a while

D- Now, make true sentences about yourself using the modal verb 'WOULD':

- 1- _____
- 2- _____
- 3- _____
- 4- _____
- 5- _____
- 6- _____
- _____
- 7- _____
- 8- _____
- 9- _____

LESSON 17

MODAL VERBS—CAN / COULD

Verbs

I can
You can
He can
She could
It could
We could
They can

Verbos

Eu posso / sei / consigo
Você pode / sabe / consegue
Ele pode / sabe / consegue
Ela pôde / soube / conseguia
Pôde / conseguiu
Nós poderíamos
Eles(as) podem / sabe, / conseguem

Practicing

I can run really fast.
He can swim.
You can talk to the boss without my permission.
They could go to the beach.
My parents could go on their dream trip.
We can help you.
You could talk to me.
She can sing very well.
It can happen.
You could play the guitar when you were little.
They can drive a big truck.
He can speak at least 3 languages.
We could learn how to play the drums.

Praticando

Eu consigo correr bem rápido.
Ele sabe nadar.
Você pode falar com o chefe sem a minha permissão.
Eles podiam ir à praia
Meus pais poderiam fazer a viagem dos sonho deles.
Nós podemos te ajudar.
Você poderia falar comigo.
Ela sabe cantar muito bem.
Isso pode acontecer.
Você sabia tocar guitarra quando era pequeno.
Eles sabem dirigir um caminhão grande.
Ele sabe falar pelo menos 3 idiomas.
Nós poderíamos aprender a tocar bateria.

Negative

He can't go to school tomorrow.
I couldn't talk to you.
She can't speak Russian.
They can't cook, so they ordered pizza.
They can't drive well.
We can't go there by ourselves.
He couldn't do it better.

Negativo

Ele não pode ir à escola amanhã.
Eu não pude falar com você.
Ela não sabe falar russo.
Eles não sabem cozinhar, então pediram pizza.
Eles não conseguem dirigir bem
Não conseguimos ir lá sozinhos.
Ele não pôde fazê-lo melhor.

Interrogative

Could you help me, please?
Can I go out tonight?
Can he leave this box?
Can she write the reports today?
Could they prepare the room?
Could the doctor be more polite?
Could we just skip this part?
Can we get there by boat?
Could you explain this subject again?

Interrogativo

Você poderia me ajudar, por favor?
Posso sair hoje à noite?
Ele consegue levantar essa caixa?
Ela consegue fazer os relatórios hoje?
Eles poderiam preparar a sala?
O médico poderia ser mais educado?
Podemos apenas pular essa parte?
Conseguimos chegar lá de barco?
Você poderia explicar novamente esse assunto?

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

John – Josh, could you do me a favor? I need to get some homework done and I can't do it by myself. Can you help?
Josh – Yes, I can. What are the subjects?
John – Well, if you can do the math homework I can get the others done. It's just because I'm too bad at math. I can't understand it.
Josh – Math is pretty easy. I'm good at math, I can do it.
John – Oh man, I couldn't do it without your help. Thanks a lot!
Josh – Don't worry, John. Leave it to me. Go do the others.
John – Nice. By the way, we can have some ice cream right after the homework.
Josh – I won't go because I left my wallet at school. But if you can pay for mine, let's do it!

Conversation 2

Mona – Alice, could you work tomorrow? We're short on people at the office.
Alice – Yes, I could. But I'll need to leave earlier.
Mona – That's fine. I can't handle all the work left by the workers who took vacation.
Alice – Don't worry. Together we can get the job done and both of us can go home earlier.
Mona – Not really. I missed some days last month, so I need to work extra hours to pay for those days. I couldn't just let the boss take them from my paycheck.
Alice – Oh, I got it. Sorry to hear that!
Mona – Don't worry. I can't do much at home anyway. It's better to be working.

Read the extract below with your teacher to understand the usage of CAN and COULD:

Some people live in very bad conditions. They can't get a job because they couldn't go to school when they were little and their parents also didn't have much to offer. What could companies do to such people? More jobs can be created requiring less expertise, so that way these people could get the job easily. The government could help as well by creating education programs to facilitate the integration of these people in society.

The population could get together and raise money to buy food and then share this food between the unfortunate. Children can grow sick if they don't have the right amount of nutrients, so why can't they just have the lifestyle that most wish?

Now, with your own words, write down what you could do to make this world better:

PRACTICE

A- Translate the sentences below using 'can' or 'could':

1- Eu consigo pular 10 metros.

2- Ele sabe contar até 100 em japonês.

3- Ela sabe pilotar um avião muito bem.

4- O que você poderia fazer para ajudar seus pais em casa?

5- Eles conseguem chegar mais cedo todos os dias?

6- Nós conseguíamos desenhar quando estávamos no jardim de infância.

7- Como posso te ajudar?

8- Você pode me ajudar?

9- Você poderia nos ajudar?

10- Elas conseguem ler dois livros em um único dia

11- Eu não consigo fazer o meu dever de casa sozinho.

12- Os trabalhadores conseguem trabalhar neste domingo?

13- Ele não conseguiu entregar os relatórios antes do prazo.

14- Eu não consigo autorizar este empréstimo sem os documentos.

15- Eles conseguem correr bem rápido.

16- Você não sabe andar de bicicleta?

17- Eles sabem lidar com a tecnologia muito bem.

PRACTICE

B- Correct the mistakes in the sentences below:

1. She can rides a motorcycle.

2. He doesn't can take care of his nephews.

3. We could to study English and French with your help.

4. You to could prepare the exams to apply tomorrow.

5- Do you can to cook dinner tonight?

6- Can I to help you?

7- What does can he do for the country?

8- How could you does this to me?

9- The children cannot to play on the street.

10- Do you can hold a minute, please?

C- Now, write down 5 things you can do and 5 things you can't do. 1- I can

2- I can

3- I can

4- I can

5- I can

6- I can't

7- I can't

8- I can't

9- I can't

10- I can't

LESSON 18

MODAL VERBS—MAY / MIGHT

Verb

May
Might

Explicação

Indica permissão ou possibilidade (maior probabilidade).
Indica permissão ou possibilidade (menor probabilidade).

Praticando

It may rain tomorrow.
He might come to the party later.
You may go outside to play with your friends.
They might talk to him about the project.
My parents might let me go to the USA.
We may be concerned about the absences.
May the force be with you.
She might be tired after the game.
It might break if you sit down.
He might be angry with me.
We may buy a new bike for our son.
They might sell it for a lower price if we bargain.

Praticando

Pode ser que chova amanhã.
Pode ser que ele venha para a festa mais tarde.
Você pode ir pra fora para brincar com seus amigos.
Elas devem falar com ele sobre o projeto.
Pode ser que meus pais me deixem ir aos EUA.
Podemos ficar preocupados a respeito das faltas.
Que a força esteja com você.
Ela deve estar cansada depois do jogo.
Pode quebrar se você se sentar.
Ele pode estar zangado comigo.
Devemos comprar uma bicicleta nova para nosso filho.
Pode ser que eles vendam isso por um preço menor se a gente pechinchar.

Negative

He may not be here after the speech.
I might not go to the bank because it's hot.
She may not be the right person for the position.
They might not sleep over their friend's.
They may not understand if you speak in Spanish.
We might not get tired of playing cards.
He may not get rich working less.
I may not have enough information about the deal.
She might not be upset.
Maybe she's just tired.
You may not give him your belongings.
They might not be happy with me.
He may not stop by to talk to me.

Negativo

Ele pode não estar aqui depois do discurso.
Pode ser que eu não vá ao banco porque está quente.
Ela pode não ser a pessoa certa para a vaga.
Eles podem não dormir na casa do amigo deles.
Eles não devem entender se você falar em espanhol.
Nós não podemos nos cansar de jogar baralho.
Ele não deve ficar rico trabalhando menos.
Eu posso não ter informação o suficiente sobre o acordo.
Ela pode não estar zangada.
Talvez ela esteja apenas cansada.
Você não deve dá-lo seus pertences.
Elas podem não estar felizes comigo.
Ele pode não passar aqui para falar comigo.

Interrogative

May I borrow your pencil?
May we come a bit later tomorrow?
Might they have something to drink?
May she go out tonight?
May he take a loan at the bank?
May they take a ride back home?
Might I attend the meeting too?
May we go fishing this weekend?
Might it break down if I turn on?

Interrogativo

Posso pegar seu lápis emprestado?
Podemos vir um pouco mais tarde amanhã?
Eles podem ter algo para beber?
Ela pode sair hoje à noite?
Ele pode pegar um empréstimo no banco?
Eles podem pegar uma carona de volta pra casa?
Eu posso participar da reunião também?
Podemos ir pescar esse final de semana?
Pode quebrar se eu o ligar?

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

Passenger 1 - Excuse me, may I sit here?

Passenger 2 - Yes, you may. The bus might not be crowded today.

Passenger 1 - Yes, it seems that many people won't leave their homes today. It might be because of the bad weather condition.

Passenger 2 - For sure it is. We might be hit by a hurricane by the end of the day, they said.

Passenger 1 - Well, in this case, we may not be able to go out until tomorrow.

Passenger 2 - By the way, may I have your name?

Passenger 1 - Yes. My name is Philip. How about yours?

Passenger 2 - It's George. Nice to meet you Philip.



Conversation 2

Store clerk - Welcome to Charming Store, how may I help you?

Customer - Hello, I'm looking for a fancy dress. What do you have?

Store clerk - I do have many colors and shapes of dresses. May I bring all of them?

Customer - I might like some of them. Yes, you may bring them.

Store clerk - You might not be familiar with our brand, but it's one of the best in town.

Customer - I've heard of it before. I might buy something from you if I find a fancy dress.

Store clerk - You may try on the ones you like most and I'm sure you'll love them.



The usages of MAY and MIGHT

May and might are modal verbs. Modal verbs are auxiliary verbs which provide meaning to the main verb. Sometimes they can be used interchangeably.

1- To express possibility.

In this case, 'might' is used more frequently in spoken language.

-It might rain tomorrow, you better take an umbrella. (*Pode chover amanhã, é melhor levar um guarda-chuva.*)

-I might take you to the museum on the weekend. (*Pode ser que eu leve ao museu no final de semana.*)

-She seems to be very happy. I think she may accept the invitation. (*Ela parece estar bastante feliz. Eu acho que ela deve aceitar o convite.*)

2- To give permission.

-You may play outside today. (*Você pode brincar lá fora hoje.*)

-She may leave earlier this week. (*Ela pode sair mais cedo essa semana.*)

-As soon as you finish the test, you might leave. (*Assim que terminarem a prova, podem sair.*)

May not can be used to NOT give permission or to prohibit someone from doing something.

3- To ask for permission.

'Might' can be used to ask for permission, but it is much less common to hear.

-May I go to the bathroom, please? (*Posso ir ao banheiro, por favor?*)

-May we take some time off next month? (*Podemos ter uma folga próximo mês?*)

-May I carry your bags? (*Posso carregar suas sacolas?*)

-Might I join you? (*Posso me juntar a vocês?*)

Might could also be used to ask for permission but it is much more uncommon to hear.

PRACTICE

A- Translate the sentences below using MAY or MIGHT:

1- Vejo algumas nuvens, deve chover à noite.

2- Vejo poucas nuvens, pode ser que chova à noite.

3- Ela deve querer tirar um cochilo, ela parece cansada.

4- Pode ser que as crianças assistam TV hoje depois do jantar.

5- Posso me sentar aqui?

6- Nós não devemos usar o telefone em sala de aula.

7- Como posso te ajudar?

8- Que todos os seus sonhos se tornem realidade.

9- Essa prateleira pode cair com tanto peso.

10- Pode ser que eles se machuquem com essa brincadeira.

11- Pode ser que o jogo acabe em empate.

12- Os funcionários podem deixar seus pertences aqui?

13- Podemos ter uma prova surpresa a qualquer momento.

14- Posso usar seu carro para ir ao supermercado?

15- Estou quebrado. Você pode me emprestar algum dinheiro?

16- Pode ser que a gasolina do carro acabe se você acelerar demais.

17- Em que posso te ajudar?

PRACTICE

B- Correct the mistakes in the sentences below:

1- She mayn't go to the movies with her boyfriend.

2- He doesn't might be able to take care of his nephews.

3- We may leave the room as we finished the test?

4- You might to take the test tomorrow with the others.

5- Do I may to cook dinner tonight?

6- He mays do some grocery shopping as well.

7- How much do I may help you?

8- It might take a long time go get there.

9- You don't might do that. Shame on you!

10- The cats may wrack the toys. Don't let it happen.

C – Now, write down 5 sentences with “**MAY**” and 5 with “**MIGHT**”.

1 - MAY

2 - MAY

3 - MAY

4 - MAY

5 - MAY

6 - MIGHT

7- MIGHT

8 - MIGHT

9 - MIGHT

10 - MIGHT

LESSON 19

MODAL VERBS—SHOULD / MUST

Verbs

I should
You must
He should
She must
It should
We must
They should

Practicing

I should study more for the test.
You must study more, otherwise you'll flunk.
He should be here with you.
She must pay more attention to the subject.
It should be easy.
We must pay our debts.
They must work hard to reach a higher level.
She should practice her English with a native.
The teachers must punish him because his attitude.
We should help them achieve their goals.
You should talk more to your children.
If you want it, then you should go for it.
It must be broken.

Negative

He shouldn't talk to me like that.
I must not eat junk food when I'm sick.
She shouldn't answer the e-mail.
They mustn't drink coffee so many times a day.
We shouldn't swear if we can't keep a promise.
It must not be on for too long.
You shouldn't travel tomorrow.

Interrogative

Should I stay here to help you with the errands?
Must he come to talk to you?
Should she take a lot of money with her?
Should it be placed on this spot?
Must they visit their parents more?
Should we buy the tickets for the concert?
Must we pay what they're asking for?
How must we deal with this problem?

Should you forward the email to your boss?

Verbos

Eu deveria
You deve
Ele deveria
Ela deve
Deveria
Nós devemos
Eles(as) deveriam

Praticando

Eu deveria estudar mais para a prova.
Você deve estudar mais, caso contrário irá reprovar.
Ele deveria estar aqui com você.
Ela tem que prestar mais atenção no assunto.
Deve ser fácil.
Nós precisamos pagar nossas dívidas.
Elas devem trabalhar duro para alcançar um nível mais alto.
Ela deveria praticar o inglês dela com um nativo.
Os professores devem puni-lo devido à atitude dele.
Deveríamos ajudá-los a alcançar seus objetivos.
Você deveria falar mais com suas crianças.
Se você quer, então você deveria ir em frente.
Deve estar quebrado(a).

Negativo

Ele não deveria falar comigo assim.
Eu não devo comer besteira quando estou doente.
Ela não deveria responder ao e-mail.
Eles não devem tomar café tantas vezes ao dia.
Não devemos jurar se não pudermos manter uma promessa.
Não deve ficar ligado por muito tempo.
Você não deveria viajar amanhã.

Interrogativo

Eu deveria ficar aqui para te ajudar com as tarefas?
Ele precisa vir para falar com você?
Ela deveria levar bastante dinheiro com ela?
Deveria ser colocado nesse lugar?
Eles devem visitar mais os pais deles?
Devemos comprar os ingressos para o concerto?
Devemos pagar o que eles estão pedindo?
Como devemos lidar com esse problema?
Você deveria encaminhar o e-mail para seu chefe?

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

Carlos – Hey, Adam. I'm trying to lose some weight. What do you suggest?

Adam – Hi, Carlos. First of all, you must enroll in a gym. Working out is definitely something you can't miss. Then, you should have a balanced diet with some fruits and proteins.

Carlos – I got it. But the thing is, I hate exercising and I don't really like fruits, I'm kind of picky.

Adam – If you want to lose weight you shouldn't say that. I have to follow the rule: "No pain no gain". You must take junk food out of your menu and start enjoying working out.

Carlos – I'll try to follow your tips. It shouldn't be that tough. Losing weight is something easy.

Adam – Not easy at all, Carlos. There should be a plan to follow and you must stick to it.

Carlos – You're right. I shouldn't be that lazy and I must not give up on my goals.

Adam – That's what I'm talking about. We must be strong and keep on going.



Conversation 2

Secretary – Excuse me, ma'am. Some clients are requesting the bid. Should I send it to them?

Manager – Yes, you should. There are many other companies competing with us and we must not waste time.

Secretary – Yes, ma'am. I'll do it right now.

Manager – You must also call them to make sure they received it.

Secretary – Ok, I'll do that as well. Should I ask them to reply as soon as possible?

Manager – No, you shouldn't. I'll talk to them personally about that.

There are some other issues I need you to help me with. I'll send you an e-mail with a list.

Secretary – Yes, ma'am. You can count on me to take care of it!



The usages of **SHOULD** and **MUST**.

Should' and 'must' are modal verbs. Modal verbs are auxiliary verbs which provide meaning to the main verb.

1- We use **should** to give or ask for advice or opinion.

-You should study more to pass the test. (*Você deveria estudar mais para passar no teste.*)

-What should I do to learn English fast? (*O que eu devo fazer para aprender inglês rapidamente?*)

-In my opinion, you shouldn't wear this suit at the meeting. (*Na minha opinião, você não deveria usar esse terno na reunião.*)

2- We use **must** to express obligation, give orders and strong advice.

-You must remain in the classroom during the test. (*Vocês devem permanecer na sala de aula durante a prova.*)

-You mustn't leave the house. (*Você não deve sair da casa.*)

-You must buy one of them. (*Você deve comprar um deles.*)

We can also use "have to" to express obligation, give orders and strong advice. But be aware of its structure in the negative and interrogative forms.

-You have to remain in the classroom during the test. (*Vocês devem permanecer na sala de aula durante a prova.*)

You have to buy one of them. (*Você deve comprar um deles.*)

*When asking with 'have to' you must use the auxiliary 'do' or 'does'.

Do you have to work tomorrow? (*Você tem que trabalhar amanhã?*)

PRACTICE

A- Translate the sentences below using **SHOULD** and **MUST**.

1- Você deveria praticar inglês por aproximadamente 1h por dia.

2- Nós deveríamos ficar em casa esse final de semana.

3- Ele deve participar do evento anual para aprender mais.

4- Ela deve fazer as ligações que a chefe pediu?

5- Eu devo contar o segredo para ela?

6- Vocês deveriam caminhar no parque todos os dias.

7- O que eu deveria fazer para aprender um novo idioma rapidamente?

8- Você deve estudar diariamente e praticar pelo menos 1h ao dia.

9- Eu deveria aprender uma nova profissão para estar preparado para o mercado de trabalho.

10- Vocês não devem brincar com isso, é perigoso.

11- Ele não deveria entrar na sala sem pedir permissão.

12- Os relatórios devem ser entregues até amanhã ao meio dia.

13- Nós deveríamos viajar para a Flórida nas férias.

PRACTICE

B- What do the sentences below express? Choose the best alternative for each one of them:

1- You should read at least one book a week.

- a) Advice b) Order c) Opinion

2- You must tell him the truth.

- a) Advice b) Order c) Opinion

3- He must not play on the street.

- a) Advice b) Order c) Opinion

4- If you're not feeling well, you should see a doctor.

- a) Advice b) Order c) Opinion

5- They must come tomorrow. If they don't, I'll have to fire them.

- a) Advice b) Order c) Opinion

6- You must wear a seatbelt at all times.

- a) Advice b) Order c) Opinion

7- Must I grow more varieties of grapes to export?

- a) Advice b) Order c) Opinion

8- The children have a sore throat. They shouldn't drink water.

- a) Advice b) Order c) Opinion

9- People should eat enough fruits in order to be healthy.

- a) Advice b) Order c) Opinion

10- They have to stay home while in quarantine.

- a) Advice b) Order c) Opinion

C – Now, write some sentences expressing obligation, order or advice with your own information, using 'should' and 'must':

1-

2-

3-

4-

5-

6-

LESSON 20

QUARTER TEST IV

A- Write sentences using the information given and the modal verb in parentheses:

1- my children / not read or write / yet / . (can)

2- cell phone / lend me / you / your / ? (could)

3- people / stay home / while / in quarantine / . (should)

4- not put / inside / cage / your hands / you / . (must)

5- clouds / there are / some / it / rain / in the sky / . / . (might)

6- very hot / be / in Florida / in August / it / . (can)

7- mad / with the rules / get / people / . (may)

8- travel / by car / the world / I / around / . (would)

9- do / in this / what / he / situation / ? (would)

10- learn / before / English / the end of the year / we / . (must)

B- Translate the sentences below:

1- Devemos usar uniforme na escola, é obrigatório.

2- Eu trabalharia até mais tarde, sem problema.

3- Ele sabe andar de cavalo muito bem.

4- Ela não consegue responder todas as questões da prova.

5- Está ensolarado, mas pode chover mais tarde.

6- Vocês devem estar muito cansados da viagem. Vocês deveriam descansar.

7- Os bandidos podem ser sentenciados a 10 anos na prisão por roubarem o banco.

8- Isso não deveria estar aqui. Coloque no lugar certo.

9- O que você faria para conseguir um aumento?

LESSON 21

ADVERBS TO EXPRESS AGREEMENT

Adverbs

Too
So
Either
Neither

Advérbios

Também
Também
Também não
Também não

Practicing

I study English. Me too. / So do I.
He can swim. Me too. / So can I.
They speak English. Us too. / So do we.
She should go. You too. / So do you.
I'll work tomorrow. Me too. / So will I.
We run fast. Them too. / So do they.
I have a laptop. Me too. / So do I.
They saved the day. Us too. / So did we.
He went to the beach. Me too. / So did I.
He worked hard. Her too. / So did she.
My dad is young. Mine too. / So is mine.
You are tired. You too. / So are you.

Negative

I don't like pizza.
We don't go out often. *I don't either. / Neither do I.*
He didn't do the homework. *He didn't either. / Neither do I.*
They won't shave their heads. *She didn't either. / Neither did she.*
I won't either. / Neither will I.
You shouldn't eat it. *We shouldn't either. / Neither should we.*
They can't afford it. *She can't either. / Neither can she.*
The teachers won't quit. *I won't either. / Neither will I.*
We're not hungry. *He isn't either. / Neither is he.*
She doesn't need help. *They don't either. / Neither do they.*
I didn't like the book. *We didn't either. / Neither did we.*
She couldn't go out. *I couldn't either. / Neither could I.*
We shouldn't worry. *I shouldn't either. / Neither should I.*
He mustn't be there. *They mustn't either. / Neither must they.*
They didn't show up. *You didn't either. / Neither did you.*
I wasn't invited. *They weren't either. / Neither were they.*
You aren't trying. *You aren't either. / Neither are you.*
We didn't read the book. *She didn't either. / Neither did she.*
I'm not sick. *I'm not either. / Neither am I.*
I don't have to work. *We don't either. / Neither do we.*

Praticando

Eu estudo inglês. Eu também.
Ele sabe nadar. Eu também.
Eles(as) falam inglês. Nós também.
Ela deveria ir. Você também.
Trabalharei amanhã. Eu também.
Nós corremos rápido. Eles também.
Eu tenho um notebook. Eu também.
Eles(as) salvaram o dia. Nós também.
Ele foi à praia. Eu também.
Ele trabalhou duro. Ela também.
Eles(as) deveriam ir. Elas também.
Meu pai é jovem. O meu também.
Você está cansado. Você também.

Negativo

Eu não gosto de pizza.
Não saímos com frequência. *Eu também não.*
Eu também não.
Ele não fez o dever de casa. *Ele também não.*
Eles não rasparam a cabeça deles. *Eutambém não.*
Você não deveria comer isso. *Nóstambém não.*
Eles não conseguem bancar isso. *Elatambém não.*
Os professores não se demitirão. *Eutambém não.*
Não estamos com fome. *Ele também não.*
Ela não precisa de ajuda. *Ele também não.*
Eu não gostei do livro. Nós também não.
Ela não pôde sair. *Eu também não.*
Não deveríamos nos preocupar. *Eutambém não.*
Ele não deve estar lá. *Eles também não.*
Elas não apareceram. *Vocêstambém não.*
Eu não fui convidado. *Ela também não.*
Vocês não estão tentando. *Você também não.*
Não lemos o livro. *Ela também não.*
Eu não estou doente. *Eu também não.*
Eu não tenho que trabalhar. *Nós também não.*

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

Carlos –Hey, Adam, what did you think of the new teacher?

Adam –I didn't like her at all.

Carlos–Neither did I. She is too tough. She asked so many question on her first day. But I liked the books she gave us.

Adam– Me too. I really needed new books.

Carlos – So did I. Now it'll be much easier to get the homework done. I'll use all these books to accomplish good grades in all of my activities..

Adam –Yeah, so will I. Specially in geography. There's so much to memorize in so little time.

Carlos –Indeed. I don't think I'll know all information by heart before the test.

Adam –I won't either. But we have to try harder. Let's start right now.

Conversation

2

Lucy –Hello, Paul, how are you?

Paul –Hi, Lucy. I'm pretty well. How about you?

Lucy–I'm well too. Paul, I received a sample of the new product from our suppliers but I definitely didn't like it.

Paul – Neither did I. It seems to me that they weren't professional. I'll ask them for another sample.

Lucy – So will I. If I sell it for our customers, they'll all send it back to me.

Paul – Mine too. We have very demanding customers and they all want the finest product. If we fail with them, we might lose our companies.

Lucy – For sure. I'll let you know as soon as I receive the new sample.

The usages of TOO, SO, EITHER and NEITHER

When we want to agree with the speaker in a statement we use adverbs. The adverbs TOO and SO are used to agree or relate with positive statements..

Speaker 1 – I study English at Aliança from Monday to Thursday and I love it.

Speaker 2 – Me too. / So do I.

**Notice that the structure of the expression with 'too' is: OBJECT PRONOUN + TOO.*

But when using 'so' the structure is: SO + AUXILIARY + SUBJECT PRONOUN. Subject pronouns: I, you, he, she, it, we, they. Object pronouns: me, you, him, her, it, us, them."

To agree with a negative statement we use EITHER and NEITHER.

Speaker 1 – I didn't study English when I was a kid.

Speaker 2 – I didn't either. / Neither did I.

**Notice that we use EITHER at the end of the sentence, right after the auxiliary.*

But when you agree with NEITHER it comes before the auxiliary.

NEITHER = NOT + EITHER

In spoken English you can also use OBJECT PRONOUN + EITHER / NEITHER. But this structure mustn't be used in formal texts.

Speaker 1 – I didn't study English when I was a kid.

Speaker 2 – Me either. / Me neither.

PRACTICE

A- Agree with the sentences below using the adverbs learned. Follow the example:

1- I like to read books at night.

2- I don't like to watch TV.

3- I didn't study for my English test.

4- I'll write an e-mail to my cousins.

5- I should be more kind to people.

6- I can draw a portrait of the Mona Lisa.

7- I can't imagine how far it is.

8- I shouldn't apply for the position.

9- I must call my parents more often.

10- I mustn't let them do whatever they want.

11- My neighbor is going to go on a cruise.

12- My brother is studying law in Boston.

13- My father loves to watch games on Sundays.

14- I don't want to take the bus.

15- I'm not happy about the current situation in our country.

16- I shouldn't pay attention to bad news.

17- I will learn English fast at Aliança.

PRACTICE

B- Choose the appropriate NEITHER / EITHER structure to respond to the following sentences. One item can have more than one correct answer.

1- Cathy doesn't like dogs.

a) I don't either. b) Neither am I! c) I am not either! d) And I am neither!

2. I don't go to work every day.

a) Neither do I. b) Do I either. c) Neither am I. d) I am not either.

3. Paul can't type well.

a) I will either. b) Neither could I. c) I could either. d) I can't either.

4. I don't need to go to work.

a) I don't work either. b) Neither need I. c) I wasn't either. d) I don't either.

5. He doesn't need to study.

a) I don't need either. b) Neither do I. c) I should either. d) Neither need I.

6. She doesn't wish to stop smoking.

a) I wasn't either. b) Neither am I. c) Neither wish I. d) Neither do I.

7. Vanessa couldn't go.

a) I wouldn't either. b) I shouldn't either. c) I could either. d) Neither could I.

8. Mary shouldn't do her homework now.

a) I am not either. b) I shouldn't either. c) Shouldn't I either. d) Neither do I.

ALSO, AS WELL and TOO

We use 'also' in the following positions in the sentences:- in the normal mid position for adverbs,- between the subject and the main verb,- after the modal verb or first auxiliary verb,- after 'be' as a main verb. In these positions, the meaning of 'also' usually connects back to the whole clause that comes before:"

She likes to read books.

He also likes to read books (him too).

As well' is much more common in speaking than in writing, and it is more common in speaking than 'also'.

As well' almost always comes in the end position:

A- I'm going pretty good. How about you?

B- I'm doing good, as well.

We use 'too' at the end of the sentence:

She likes to read books.

He likes to read books too. (Him too.).

Linking negatives

"We use EITHER instead of 'also', 'as well' or 'too' to connect two negative ideas:

Bob doesn't speak Portuguese and I don't think Susie does either."

LESSON 22

SOME / ANY / NO

Determiners

Some
Any
No

Determinantes

Algum(a) / Alguns(mas) / Um pouco de
Nenhum(a) / Qualquer um(a)
Nenhum(a)

Practicing

I have some friends in the USA.
She needs to buy some new boots.
He needs some time off.
We would like to drink some tea.
They bought some chicken to eat tonight.
Some people like to risk their own lives.
It needs some repair.
You would go to some different places.
Give me any of these books.
She made some pasta.
We met some students from other countries.

Praticando

Eu tenho alguns amigos nos EUA.
Ela precisa comprar botas novas.
Ele precisa de algum tempo livre.
Gostaríamos de beber um pouco de chá.
Eles trouxeram frango para comer hoje à noite.
Algumas pessoas gostam de se arriscar.
Isso precisa de reparo.
Vocês iriam para alguns lugares diferentes.
Me dê qualquer um desses livros.
Ela fez um pouco de macarrão.
Conhecemos alguns estudantes de outros países.

Negative

I need no advice.
There isn't any sugar left.
She doesn't know any places in this city.
We can't just choose any car.
They shouldn't go to any store.
I need to go to no school.
He doesn't need any help.
I'm not eating any of this food.

Negativo

Não preciso de nenhum conselho.
Não tem açúcar sobrando.
Ela não conhece nenhum lugar nesta cidade.
Não podemos simplesmente escolher qualquer carro.
Eles não deveriam ir para qualquer loja.
Não preciso ir pra nenhuma escola.
Ele não precisa de nenhuma ajuda.
Não vou comer nada dessa comida.

Interrogative

Would you like some coffee?
Did you catch any fishes?
Did you see any good movies yesterday?
Would they go to any of these places?
Does any student know the answer?
Can I have some milk, please?
Is there any orange juice?
Are there any fruits in the fridge?
Do you have any friends in the USA?

Interrogativo

Você gostaria de um pouco de café?
Você pegou algum peixe?
Você assistiu algum filme bom ontem?
Eles iriam para algum desses lugares?
Algum aluno sabe a resposta?
Posso ter um pouco de leite, por favor?
Tem suco de laranja?
Tem alguma fruta na geladeira?
Você tem amigos nos EUA?

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

Bob – Hi, Max, Do you have any fighting games to lend me?
Max – Hi, Bob. Yes, I do. I have some nice fighting games but they're kind of violent, though.
Bob – There is some violence in any fighting games. It's unavoidable.
Max – Indeed. There's no way to avoid that.
Bob – So, if you can lend me some of them, I'll give them back by next week.
Max – Yes, sure. You can stop by and take them. But there is always some nice place to go or some good activities to do when you're off.
Bob – I know. But the thing is that I'm taking these days off because I have the flu.
Max – Oh man, that's bad. Don't forget to wear a mask when you come by.



Conversation 2

Waiter –Are you ready to order, sir?
Guest –Yes, I would like some of your salad, some dessert and a soda.
Waiter –And would you like some dressing for the salad?
Guest –Yes, I would. You can surprise me with any side dressing.
Waiter –I'll do my best. What kind of soda and dessert would you choose?
Guest –Actually, I changed my mind. I want no soda at all. I'm on a diet. For dessert, you can bring me any with low calories.
Waiter –You may choose from a fruit or our low calorie pudding.
Guest –I'll take the pudding, please.
Waiter –I'll be right back.



We can add words such as 'BODY', 'ONE', 'WHERE' and 'THING' to the determiners to change them into indefinite pronouns. Let's take a look at the chart below to understand it better:

DETERMINER	PERSON	PLACE	THING
Some	Someone Somebody Anyone Anybody	Somewhere	Something
Any	No one Nobody	Anywhere	Anything
No		Nowhere	Nothing

The rules for using them as objects in the sentences are the same as the ones for determiners. 'SOME' is used in positive, negative or interrogative. 'ANY' is used in negative sentences, interrogatives or affirmatives (when the amount of the referred noun is not important). 'NO' is used for negative ideas but in positive sentences.

There is somebody knocking at the door. (*Tem alguém batendo na porta.*)
 There isn't anybody willing to help us. (*Não tem ninguém disposto a nos ajudar.*)
 Is there something you need to tell me? (*Há algo que você precisa me dizer?*)
 He has nothing to do today. (*Ele tem nada para fazer hoje.*)
 There's nowhere I want to go. (*Não há lugar algum para o qual eu queira ir.*)
 Anyone can speak English fluently. (*Qualquer um pode falar inglês fluentemente.*)
 We can go anywhere we want. (*Podemos ir para qualquer lugar que quisermos.*)

PRACTICE

A- Translate the sentences below:

1- Preciso ir para qualquer lugar quieto para relaxar.

2- Eles precisam de algumas ferramentas para consertar o carro.

3- Não preciso de ninguém para me dizer o que preciso fazer.

4- Você conhece algum ferreiro bom neste bairro?

5-Eles gostariam de tomar um pouco de chá?

6-Nós temos alguns bons livros para ler.

7- Não está passando nenhum programa interessante na TV.

8- Tem algum queijo na geladeira?

9- Alguns alunos participarão dos jogos de verão.

10- Nenhum estudante participará das olimpíadas este ano devido à pandemia.

11- Ninguém apareceu para receber o grande prêmio.

12- Você tem algum tempo livre esta semana?

13- Nenhum desses jogos deve ser jogado por crianças.

14- Como que ninguém percebeu isso?

15- Vocês gostariam de comer alguma sobremesa?

16- Eles querem algum tipo de tratamento especial?

17- Você está procurando por alguém?

PRACTICE

B- Complete the sentences with **SOME, ANY** or **NO**:

- 1- I don't need _____ money because I'm going to bring my lunch to school.
- 2- He has _____ pencils, but I have _____ to lend to him.
- 3- Our teacher didn't apply _____ test last month.
- 4- I'm tired. Do we have _____ time to take a nap?
- 5- Do they have _____ museums in town? No, they don't have _____
- 6- Paul wants to buy _____ new shoes.
- 7- Excuse me, I need _____ information about the flight to Boston.
- 8- I don't have _____ paper, but Mary has _____
- 9- Mr. Smith has _____ questions that he wants to ask you. You should talk
- 10- They have _____ apples, but they have _____ bananas. So they'll have to bake na apple pie.
- 11- I'm sorry, but we don't have _____ more tickets.
- 12- Thomas read _____ interesting books last month. He learned a lot.
- 13- I bought _____ milk and _____ sugar at the supermarket.
- 14- A: Do you have _____ coins for the bus? B: No, I have _____ coins.
- 15- I need _____ help with my homework. This subject is very difficult.

C- Complete the sentences with **SOME, ANY, NO** and the compound indefinite pronouns:

- 1- Max, do we have _____ to eat? – Of course, I bought _____ food yesterday.
- 2- There's _____ at the door. Are you expecting _____ ?
- 3- Did you go _____ last night?
- 4- You have to do _____ about it. Otherwise, the situation will get out of control.
- 5- Choose _____ from this store. It doesn't matter what, I'll buy it.
- 6- I can't find my cell phone. I think I left it _____ .
- 7- I have _____ to do today, but tomorrow I have _____ to go. Let's hang out tomorrow then.
- 8- This party is so boring. Let's go _____ else.
- 9- Is there _____ you need? – No, I'm just looking for _____ .
- 10 - Is there _____ in the classroom without uniform?
- 11- John lives _____ in Canada, but I don't really know the exact town.
- 12- Does _____ in the audience have a mobile phone?
- 13- Could I have _____ to drink, please?
- 14- I would like to go _____ this summer, but not just _____ I'd like to travel abroad.
- 15- _____ can play this game. It's easy.
- 16- I went shopping yesterday. I bought _____ for you, but I didn't buy _____ for me.

LESSON 23

DO / MAKE - EXPRESSIONS

Verb
Do
Make

Verbo
Fazer
Fazer

Practicing

I need to do laundry on Saturday.
She needs you to do her a favor.
They always do well on tests.
The local news will do a poll.
My husband always does the shopping for me.
We do puzzles every week to exercise our brains.

Negative

Don't make noise when I'm sleeping.
The deal didn't make any profit at all.
He doesn't make trouble at school.
She didn't do her duties.
They didn't do overtime.
We didn't help our mother to do the dishes.
The teachers don't do researches on the flu.x

Interrogative

Do you do the housework every day?
Do they ever do the right thing?
Does she have her hair done at the hairdresser?
Do we need to make an appointment with the dentist?
Does he make believe when people lie?
Did she make it clear about your duties?
Do their children make a fuss when they go shopping?
Should they do the cleaning more often?
Can you do me a favor? Will you do it over again?

Praticando

Preciso lavar roupas aos sábados.
Ela precisa que você faça-lhe um favor.
Eles sempre se dão bem em provas.
O noticiário local fará uma pesquisa social.
O meu marido sempre faz as compras para mim.
Solucionamos quebra-cabeças toda semana para exercitar nossos cérebros.

Negativo

Não faça barulho quando estou dormindo.
O negócio não teve lucro algum.
Ele não cria confusão na escola.
Ela não cumpriu com suas obrigações.
Eles não fizeram hora extra.
Não ajudamos nossa mãe a lavar as louças.
Os professores não fazem pesquisas sobre a gripe.

Interrogativo

Vocês fazem o trabalho de casa todos os dias?
Eles(as) sempre fazem a coisa certa?
Ela corta o cabelo dela na cabeleireira?
Precisamos marcar uma consulta com o dentista?
Ele faz que acredita quando as pessoas mentem?
Ela deixou claro sobre suas obrigações?
Os filhos deles fazem pirraça quando vão as compras?
Eles deveriam fazer a limpeza com mais frequência?
Você pode me fazer um favor?
Vocês farão isso novamente?

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

Carlos – Adam, I need you to do me a big favor. Can you?
Adam – Oh yeah, Carlos. You can count on me. What is it?
Carlos – I need to make some phone calls but I can't do them with my cell phone. Can you lend me yours? I'll make the payment to you later.
Adam – Yes, I can, Adam. The only thing is that it makes some noise when we have a bad weather like today.
Max – No worries about that. I'll make some deals with some friends and it'll be quick.
Carlos – Are you doing well on business? It seems so. You always do the right thing when it comes to business.
Adam – Well, I learned to make profit with my dad. He was really good at selling.
Carlos – That will do it. You'll rock it!



Conversation 2

Store clerk – Welcome to Rosé Boutique, how may I help you?
Customer – Hi, I'm doing some window shopping only, but if I like something, I'll call you.
Store clerk – Ok. But if you want to try on some clothes, they will make a difference on your look. You might make up your mind.
Customer – I can't do any shopping today because I didn't bring my credit card.
Store clerk – That's not a problem. We usually make some good deals with our customers and if you make up your mind to take at least 3 dresses, you can make the payment next week.
Customer – Well, in this case I'll do some business with you.
Store clerk – Great! I know you'll love to do your shopping.



There's also a verb with many different meanings when it comes to expressions. It's the verb 'to GET'.

meaning of 'to become': ficar **meaning of 'to prepare/make': preparar**

It's getting dark. - Está ficando escuro. I'll get some coffee. - Vou preparar/buscar um café.

meaning of 'to receive': ganhar
She got a nice present for her birthday. - um presente legal de aniversário.

Ela ganhou

meaning of 'to be' (as passive auxiliary): ser, receber

The robber got caught. - O assaltante foi pego.

meaning of 'to persuade/to convince': convencer
He got his father to buy him a car. - Ele convenceu o pai dele a dar-lhe um carro.

meaning of 'to obtain/to buy': arranjar, conseguir, comprar
I got a promotion. - Eu consegui uma promoção.

meaning of 'to arrive at/to reach': chegar, ir

I got home late last night. - Cheguei em casa tarde ontem de noite.

meaning of 'to catch': pegar

I don't want to get a cold. - Não quero pegar um resfriado.

meaning of 'to have something done/to order something':

He got his car fixed. - Ele mandou consertar o carro dele.

meaning of 'to understand': entender

I get what you mean. - Entendo o que você quer dizer.

meaning of 'to fetch/to pick up': pegar, trazer, buscar

Go and get the newspaper. - Vá e pegue o jornal.

PRACTICE

A- Translate the sentences below using the expressions learned:

1- Preciso fazer um acordo com os clientes antes do meu concorrente.

2- Não estou me sentindo bem. Vou marcar uma consulta com o médico.

3- Há muitos preparos a serem feitos para o casamento.

4- Assim que vocês se levantarem, arrumem a cama.

5- Os vizinhos estão fazendo muito barulho.

6- Lavei toda roupa ontem e hoje já tem um monte novamente.

7- Você sempre se sai bem nas provas?

8- Vocês não devem criar confusão na escola, não é legal.

9- Quantas ligações você fez no mês passado? A conta de telefone veio muito alta.

10- A prefeitura divulgou na última semana os dados da última reunião.

11- Sinta-se em casa aqui. Você é da família.

12- Tenho muitos pagamentos para fazer este mês.

13- Quando for aos Estados Unidos, aproveite o máximo que puder.

14- Um médico não pode cometer erros na mesa de cirurgia.

15- Eles precisam fazer um esforço para aprender um novo idioma.

16- Você pode me fazer um favor? Preciso de uma carona até o mercado.

17- Quando for explicar algo, deixe claro o que deseja mencionar.

PRACTICE

B- Complete the sentences with make or do in their correct form:

- 1- good to others and they will good to you.
- 2- He always such a fuss when I a mistake.
- 3- He refused to me a favor.
- 4- He tried to ____ fun of me but only a fool of himself.
- 5- I have a lot to today.
- 6- I want you to_ me a table.
- 7- I'm trying to_ my homework.
- 8- Let's a fire in the sitting room.
- 9- Now that we're here we must the most of it.
- 10- Should I ____ a cup of tea?
- 11- That will _____. You have eaten enough cake.
- 12- The attendant him a lot of harm by up stories.
- 13- The businessman thinks he will a fortune in America.
- 14- The mechanic must the car work.
- 15- What do you for a living?
- 16- What should I next?

C – Now, write five sentences with MAKE and five with DO with your own information:

- 1- _____
- 2- _____
- 3- _____
- 4- _____
- 5- _____
- 6- _____
- 7- _____
- 8- _____
- 9- _____
- 10- _____

LESSON 24

ADJECTIVES VS ADVERBS OF MANNER

Practicing

I'm a patient person. I wait patiently in lines.
He's a good chef. He cooks very well.
They are fast drivers. They drive fast.
She is a careful driver. She drives carefully.
This is an easy test. I take it easily.
We are hard workers. We work hard.
It is different. It works differently.
He gets reckless sometimes.
You usually drive recklessly on the road.
I feel safe when I'm with her.
His voice sounds terrible in the morning.
We speak English perfectly.

Negative

He isn't calm. He gets nervous easily.
They don't speak German perfectly.
They aren't bad players. They play well.
You don't run slowly. You always go fast.
You aren't very clever. You did it wrongly.
The children didn't play happily at the game.
We aren't lonely in the new town.

Interrogative

Do you like to go fast?
Can he kindly help us?
Is she a beautiful girl?
Does she speak beautifully?
Did the workers work hard today?
Why is he driving recklessly?
Can't they just do it well?
Are you singing happily?
Did they sell their house quickly?

Praticando

Sou uma pessoa paciente. Espero pacientemente em filas.
Ele é um bom chef. Ele cozinha muito bem.
Eles são motoristas velozes. Eles dirigem velozmente.
Ela é uma motorista cuidadosa. Ela dirige cuidadosamente.
Essa é uma prova fácil. Eu a faço facilmente.
Somos trabalhadores firmes. Trabalhamos duramente.
É diferente. Funciona diferentemente.
Ele fica imprudente às vezes.
Você geralmente dirige imprudentemente na estrada.
Eu me sinto seguro quando estou com ela.
A voz dele soa péssima pela manhã.
Falamos inglês perfeitamente.

Negativo

Ele não é calmo. Ele fica nervoso facilmente.
Eles(as) não falam alemão perfeitamente.
Eles não são maus jogadores. Eles jogam bem.
Vocês não correm vagorosamente. Vocês sempre vão rápido.
Você não é muito esperto. Você fez isso erroneamente.
As crianças não jogaram contentemente no jogo.
Não estamos solitários na nova cidade.

Interrogativo

Você gosta de ir rapidamente?
Ele pode nos ajudar gentilmente?
Ela é uma linda garota?
Ela fala lindamente?
Os trabalhadores trabalharam duramente hoje?
Por que ele está dirigindo imprudentemente?
Eles não conseguem simplesmente fazer isso?
Você está cantando contentemente?
Eles venderam a casa deles rapidamente?

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

Max – Bob, did you see that guy driving recklessly down the street? He almost hit the children.

Bob – Yes, I saw him. He's so dangerous when driving. Something must be done.

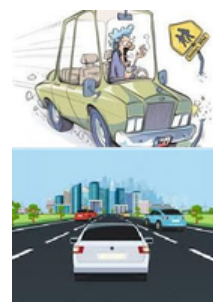
Max – Well, I called the cops and I hope they can do something about it. A reckless guy like him can't be driving freely like that.

Bob – By the way, how about you? Are you a good driver, Max?

Max – Well, I would say so. I think I can drive pretty well.

Bob – Are you a slow or fast driver?

Max – It depends on where I'm driving. I usually drive slowly, specially in the town. But when I'm traveling I like to hit the gas a bit.



Bob – So do I. The highways in our states usually have 3 lanes, which give us the possibility of going a little faster.

Conversation 2

Supervisor – Charlie, the reports I received were poorly written. Can you provide me better ones?

Manager – Yes, Peter. They were poor, indeed. I'll make sure that whoever is responsible for them will redo the work.

Supervisor – There's a nice sample which was sent to the department, use it as a model. Another thing, it has to be done fast because the deadline is tomorrow.

Manager – There's one point we need to discuss. One of our customers checked the goods he received and he said the products were made wrongly. The shapes aren't correct.

Supervisor – Ok, inform him that we will supply him with extra products and with the right shapes.

Manager – I'll speak clearly to the workers and ensure that they will produce the goods fast.

Supervisor – Keep me informed. You know I am anxious and I normally wait for the info anxiously.



Adjectives vs adverbs of manner

I'm a patient person. (Sou uma pessoa paciente.)

He's not a good singer. (Ele não é um bom cantor.)

Regular -ly adverbs

patient - patiently
careful - carefully
easy - easily
automatic - automatically

Irregular Adverbs

good - well
late - late
fast - fast
hard - hard

Angrily - furiosamente

Anxiously - ansiosamente

Badly - mal

Beautifully - lindamente

Carefully - cuidadosamente

Carelessly - descuidadamente

Clearly - claramente

Eagerly - entusiasticamente

Fast - rápido / rapidamente

Frankly - francamente

Happily - contentemente

Kindly - gentilmente

Loudly - de forma alta (som)

Naturally - naturalmente

Noisily - ruidosamente

Politely - educadamente

Powerfully - poderosamente

Quickly - rapidamente

Silently - silenciosamente

Slowly - vagarosamente / lentamente

Suspiciously - desconfiadamente

PRACTICE

A- Translate the sentences below:

1- Ele saiu da sala rapidamente porque tinha outro compromisso.

2- Ela faz todas as tarefas cuidadosamente.

3- Eles cantam muito bem.

4- Estou esperando pacientemente na sala do médico.

5- Os jovens normalmente dirigem imprudentemente.

6- Nós sempre falamos educadamente com as pessoas.

7- A máquina sempre liga automaticamente.

8- Eles são lentos e fazem tudo lentamente.

9- Ela chegou aqui repentinamente pedindo ajuda.

10- Nós trabalhamos duramente para alcançar esses resultados.

11- Ele castigou severamente seus filhos.

12- Este carro é muito bonito e ele é veloz.

13- Eles falaram gentilmente com os policiais?

14- O juiz o sentenciou erroneamente.

15- O atleta pulou muito alto.

16- O médico segurou o bebê gentilmente.

17- Você falará inglês fluentemente muito em breve.

PRACTICE

B- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words given:

- 1- Young people talk really fast (fast) and they don't speak _____ (clear). They also use a lot of slangs. It sounds _____ (terrible).
- 2- People aren't very _____ (patient) when they have to wait in long lines. They don't speak to the clerks very _____ (polite), either.
- 3- Sometimes families argue because parents and children see things _____ (different).
- 4- A lot of people _____ (automatic) answer their cell phones when they ring, even at dinner. I think that's just _____ (rude).
- 5- People don't feel _____ (safe) on the roads because so many people are driving _____ (reckless).
- 6- A lot of people try _____ (hard) to do their job _____ (careful) and they get stressed.
- 7- Do you do your homework _____ (easy) and _____ (quick)?
- 8- Do you practice English _____ (regular) outside the classroom?
- 9- Do you usually do _____ (good) on tests?

C – Choose the correct words to complete the sentences:

- 1- I know this sounds **bad / badly**, but I love to drive really **quick / fast**. I think I drive really **good / well**, though. I don't get **reckless / recklessly** when I get behind the wheel or anything.
- 3- I try **hard / hardly** to be neat and tidy. Like, I always put my keys on the shelf **automatic / automatically** when I get home.. You can lose your keys so **easy / easily**.
- 4- I think it's **important / importantly** to take work **serious / seriously**. I mean, it only seems right. If you do a job **good / well** you feel **good / well** about yourself, too.

D- Answer the questions using the word in parentheses:

- 1- How does he speak in public? (loudly)

- 2- How do you behave when you are in a job interview? (nervously)

- 3- How do you walk at the park? (slowly)

- 4- How do you live your life? (happily)

LESSON 25

QUARTERTEST V

A- Choose the right expression to agree with the statements:

1- Daniel likes to go fishing with his kids on Sundays.

a) Neither do I. b) So do I. c) So am I.

2- His wife doesn't like to go with them because she gets sick.

a) So does mine. b) Mine too. c) Neither does mine.

3- My children study English at Aliança América.

a) I don't. b) Me too. c) I do so.

4- I am very happy to be learning English easily.

a) So am I. b) So do I. c) Am I too.

B- Translate the sentences below:

1 - Eu tenho alguns bons livros para aprender inglês.

2 - Ninguém quer aprender mandarim.

3 - Você quer um pouco de café?

4 - Tem algo que eu preciso te contar. Me ligue, por favor.

C - Choose the correct verb to complete the sentences:

1- When I wake up I must _____ my bed. (do / make)

2- He mistakes when he is _____ his homework. (do / make)

3- They usually _____ the shopping on weekends. (do / make)

4- Could you _____ me a favor? (**do / make**)

D- Choose the correct word to complete the sentences:

1- Peter is a (**peaceful / peacefully**) man. He never fights.

2- She answered all the questions (**clever / cleverly**).

3- My neighbor is very kind. She always speaks to us (**polite / politely**).

4- It's a (**dangerous / dangerously**) street. Be careful.

5- I run very (**fast / fastly**).

LESSON 26

RELATIVE CLAUSES

Practicing

I know the man who lives next door.
You have a dog which is very dangerous.
I want to live in a place that is near your house.
A boutique is a place where you can buy nice clothes.
Peter is a guy who I grew up with.
He is a person who I can trust.
I went to the place that you told me about.
There are days when I feel really tired.
The girl who is standing there is my sister.
Steve Jobs, who was a genius, died from cancer.
Jane is the woman who sells nice jewelry.
They are the people who you can count on.
Papa Ginos is a nice restaurant where you feel happy.
Aliança is the school where I learn English fast.
She is the one who helps everyone.
The cops caught the thief who was stealing from the kids.
The house which we bought is brown.
The teacher who teaches here is American.

Negative

He isn't the person who I expected.
This isn't the house where I want live forever.
This isn't the car that goes fast as I wish.
Those aren't the books which will help me learn more.
Christmas isn't the holiday when people travel.
I can't find my notebook that has all my notes.
My laptop, which doesn't help me much, is broken.

Interrogative

Is he the guy who will work with us?
Are they the people who I can trust?
Are these keys the keys which you were asking about?
Do you love those socks that you wore yesterday?
Did you talk to the driver who will take us there?
Is this the company that will build the machine?
Is this the machine which will be built by the company?
Are they the ones who promised to be better?

Praticando

Eu conheço o homem que mora ao lado.
Você tem um cachorro que é muito perigoso.
Eu quero morar em um local que seja próximo à sua casa.
Uma boutique é um lugar onde você pode comprar roupas legais.
Peter é um cara com quem eu cresci.
Ele é uma pessoa em quem eu posso confiar.
Eu fui para um lugar que você me falou.
Tem dias nos quais me sinto bem cansado.
A garota que está lá em pé é minha irmã.
Steve Jobs, que foi um gênio, morreu de câncer.
Jane é a mulher que vende belas joias.
Eles são as pessoas com quem você pode contar.
Papa Ginos é um restaurante bacana onde você se sente feliz.
Aliança é a escola onde eu aprendo inglês rapidamente.
Ela é quem ajuda a todos.
Os policiais pegaram o ladrão que estava roubando das crianças.
A casa que compramos é marrom.
O professor quem ensina aqui é americano.

Negative

Ele não é a pessoa que eu esperava.
Esta não é a casa onde eu quero morar para sempre.
Este não é o carro que vai rápido como eu desejo.
Aqueles não são os livros os quais me ajudarão a aprender mais.
Natal não é o feriado em que as pessoas viajam.
Não consigo encontrar meu caderno que tem todas minhas anotações.
Meu notebook, que não me ajuda muito, está quebrado.

Interrogative

É ele o cara que vai trabalhar conosco?
Elas são as pessoas em quem posso confiar?
Estas são as chaves das quais você estava perguntando?
Você ama aquelas meias que você usou ontem?
Você falou com o motorista que vai nos levar lá?
É essa a empresa que vai construir a máquina?
É essa a máquina que vai ser construída pela empresa?
São eles os que prometeram ser melhores?

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

Greg – Hi, Bob. You're back, huh? How was your trip?

Bob – What's up, Greg? Well, it was good, but there was this guy who sat right next to me on the plane that couldn't stop talking.

Greg – But it's nice to have someone who you can talk with when on a plane, right?

Bob – Wrong. You know I'm a guy who is not really talkative. I feel uncomfortable.

Greg – I get what you mean! Yeah, it can be annoying.

Bob – Another thing is they didn't have those nice earpads which could block all noise.

Greg – Poor you, man! But you went to a place where you could have a little fun afterwards, didn't you?

Bob – Yes, I could say that, besides this guy, the whole trip was pretty cool.

Conversation 2

Man –So, what do you do?

Woman –I work for a company that builds little components for cell phones.

Man –That's interesting. And which company do you supply to?

Woman –We supply to most local businesses that sell phones.

Man –And what do you do there, exactly?

Woman –Well, I'm the person who is responsible for the whole operation and production. I have a manager who takes care of the sales and a company that delivers the boxes of components.

Man – it seems to be my lucky day. I'm the owner of a company that is looking for partners to expand the cell phone market, which is demanding at the moment.

Relative clauses are sentences that give information about people or things. A relative clause starts with a relative pronoun, which can be: 'that', 'who', 'which', 'where', 'whose', 'when', 'why'.

When the relative pronoun is an object, it can be omitted (except for 'which', 'whose' and 'where').

That is the man who I saw last night.



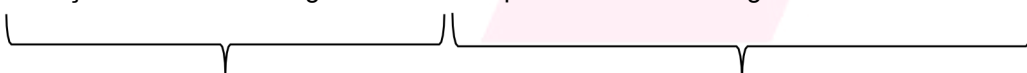
Relative clause

Relative Clause

*'who' in this case is the relative pronoun and can be omitted.

When the relative pronoun is a subject, it can never be omitted.

Aliança América is an English school that provides the best English course in the world.



Main clause

Relative Clause

*'that' in this case is the relative pronoun.

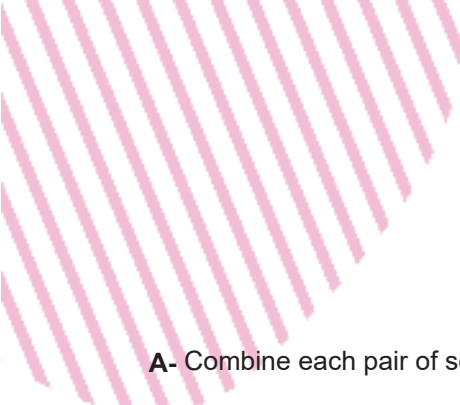
Some more examples:

-She works for a company that builds cell phones. (*Ela trabalha para uma empresa que fabrica celulares.*)

-The company she works for is the company which I can buy some materials. (*A empresa que ela trabalha é a empresa onde eu posso comprar alguns materiais.*)

-Jenny likes to talk about the things that she is doing. (*Jenny gosta de falar das coisas que ela está fazendo.*)

-I have a friend who works for Apple. (*Eu tenho um amigo que trabalha para a Apple.*)



PRACTICE

A- Combine each pair of sentences using relative clauses.

1- I have a friend in the USA. He works for a landscaping company.

2- There was a nice guy in my building. He was really good at telling jokes.

3- One of my friends from class has a soccer ball. His favorite player signed it.

4- My sister has a very nice ring. Her husband gave it to her.

5- I have a new friend. I met him at Aliança América.

6- My wife and I saw a comedy movie last night. It made us laugh a lot.

7- They called a plumber. He lives down the street.

8- I accidentally broke the computer. The computer was new.

9- They live in the countryside. The countryside is in the north of the city.

10- My sister has three children. My sister lives in Florida.

11- I have many friends. I only contact them occasionally.

12- My sister has a friend. She often goes out with her.

13- There is a co-worker in the company. He is always apologizing to the boss.

14- New York city. It is the capital of New York State, it's big.

15- He lost the money. I gave him the money.

16- The food was delicious. My mom cooked the food.

PRACTICE

B- Choose the right relative pronoun to complete each relative clause:

1- I know a sporting goods store you can buy some nice weights.

- a) that
- b) who
- c) where

2- Susie knows a girl brother works for my dad's company.

- a) who
- b) whose
- c) whom

3- Students study at Aliança América learn English easily

- a) when
- b) whose
- c) who

4- Goods are imported from other countries are very expensive due to the currency exchange rate.

- a) that
- b) where
- c) why

5- The bad weather is the reason we couldn't grow any culture this season.

- a) when
- b) where
- c) why

6- The roast beef you roasted was absolutely perfect and delicious.

- a) that
- b) who
- c) where

7- My father remembers the time he fought for the army in Vietnam.

- a) where
- b) when
- c) whose

8- The people names were selected to win the prize must check-in by the end of the day.

- a) whose
- b) whom
- c) who

9- Can you lend me the book you bought last week? It is really interesting!

- a) Why
- b) Who
- c) That

10- My grandmom's house is a place I can relax and forget everything for a while.

- a) who
- b) where
- c) when

Complete the sentences with relative pronouns from the box:

THAT – WHEN – WHERE - WHICH - WHO – WHOSE- WHY
--

1- The new movie is about a soldier was convicted of a crime.

2- He is the salesmansales surpassed the goals.

3- The DVD recorder I bought at this store a few days ago is not working.

4- That's the book I recommended reading in class.

5- Is this the hotel you are staying for the tournament?

6- My dad, travels a lot on business, is in Australia at the moment.

7- It was midnight the first rescue team arrived at the scene of the accident.

8- There are several reasons____ I am not allowed to give you any information.

9- We stayed at the famous Rockstar hotel, also had an indoor swimming pool. 10.

10- Did you write back to the person offered you a job?

11- The story is about a young woman 5-year old son suddenly disappears. 12- The tennis court they usually play is currently not available.

LESSON 27

IF CLAUSES – ZERO AND FIRST CONDITIONAL

Praticando

If I put my hands in the fire, they burn.
If I miss the 06 o'clock bus, I arrive late at work.
If I go to the store, I buy something.
If he gets late to work, his boss gets angry.
The floor gets wet if we spill some water on it.
Ice melts if we leave it outside the freezer.
When temperature is below 0°C it snows.
If it rains, I use an umbrella.
I use an umbrella if it rains.
If the weather is nice, I will go to the park.

I ask for help when I need it.
If she loses her job, she will look for another one.
They will go to the beach if it gets hot.
If you do it for me, I will pay you.
You will earn more when you graduate.
When they travel, they take their pets with them.
We pass the test if we study hard.
The teacher will get mad if we cheat on the test.
When we are on vacation, we travel.
If he travels, he spends money.

Negative

If you don't study hard, you won't pass the test.
I won't get tired if I don't play soccer.
If she doesn't go, she won't spend money.
They don't play if they don't pay.
If he doesn't have a job, he doesn't work.
We won't buy anything if we stay home.
If you don't go out, you won't be in danger.
We don't get fat if we don't eat much chocolate.
If they don't pay me, I won't deliver the package.

Interrogative

Do you get cold when you get wet from the rain?
What will you do if you win the lottery?
Does he buy anything if he goes to the store?
Do they do the homework if their mom asks them?
Will you take us there if I pay you a good amount?
Will he get hurt if he falls from the stairs?
Will the company fire him if he doesn't do the job?
Does she do the groceries if she goes to the store?

Praticando

Se eu coloco minhas mãos no fogo, elas queimam.
Se eu perco o ônibus das 06h, chego atrasado no trabalho.
Se vou à loja, compro alguma coisa.
Se ele se atrasa para o trabalho, seu chefe fica zangado.
O chão fica molhado se derramamos água nele.
Gelo derrete se o deixamos fora do congelador.
Quando a temperatura está abaixo de 0°C, neva.
Se chove, uso um guarda-chuva.
Eu uso um guarda-chuva se chove.
Se o tempo estiver bom, irei ao parque.
Peço ajuda quando preciso.
Se ela perder seu emprego, ela procurará por outro.
Eles irão para a praia se fizer calor.
Se você fizer isso por mim, eu vou te pagar.
Você vai ganhar mais quando se formar.
Quando viajam, eles levam seus animais de estimação com eles.
Passaremos no teste se estudarmos muito.
O professor vai ficar bravo se colarmos no teste.
Quando estamos de férias, viajamos.
Se ele viaja, ele gasta dinheiro.

Negative

Se você não estudar muito, não vai passar no teste.
Eu não vou ficar cansado se eu não jogar futebol.
Se ela não for, não gastará dinheiro.
Eles não jogam se não pagam.
Se ele não tem um emprego, ele não trabalha.
Não compraremos nada se ficarmos em casa.
Se você não sair, não estará em perigo.
Não engordamos se não comemos muito chocolate.
Se eles não me pagarem, eu não entregarei o pacote.

Interrogative

Você fica com frio quando se molha da chuva?
O que você fará se ganhar na loteria?
Ele compra alguma coisa se vai à loja?
Eles fazem o dever de casa se a mãe lhes pede?
Você nos levará lá se eu o pagar uma boa quantia?
Ele vai se machucar se cair da escada?
A empresa irá despedi-lo se ele não fizer o trabalho?
Ela compra mantimentos se for ao mercado?

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

Max – Hi, Joe. When it snows, do you usually go skiing?
Joe – Yes, I do it if I have some time off.
Max – So do I. When you do it, where do you usually go?
Joe – When I ski, I usually go to the North Pole Resort. It's cheap and there are many tracks.
Max – In which months does it usually snow?
Joe – If it's a good winter, it gets lots of snow from January to March.
Max – Sweet! If you go this winter, can you invite me?
Joe – Yes, of course. If I go skiing this winter, I'll give you a call.



Conversation 2

Sharon – So Diana, what are you up to this weekend?
Diana – It depends. If the weather is good, I'll take the children to the park. How about you?
Sharon – I'll also do some outdoor activities if it gets hot. We should go together.
Diana – Yes, we should. I'll give you a call to let you know if the weather forecast is good.
Sharon – I have some relatives coming over this weekend but it won't be a problem if they come, right?
Diana – No problem at all. You can also take them with you.
Sharon – I really appreciate it. You're always so kind.

Zero conditional

We use the zero conditional when the result of the condition is always true or based on a fact.

If you put your hands in the fire, *they burn*. If + subject + simple present + subject + simple present

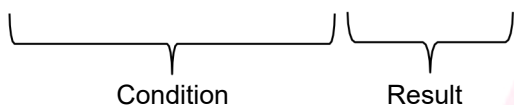
Condition

Result

First conditional

We use the first conditional when we are talking about a possible or probable result in the future.

If you put your hands in the fire, *they will burn*. If + subject + simple present + subject + future with will



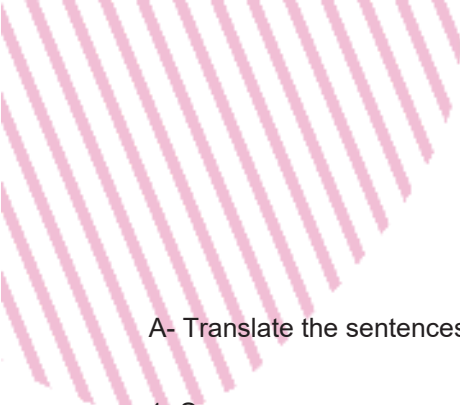
You can also start the sentence with the result without changing the meaning.

I will stay home if it rains tomorrow. (Ficarei em casa se chover amanhã.)

My hands burn if I put them in the fire. (Minhas mãos queimam se eu as coloco no fogo.)

Note: When you start a sentence with the result, you mustn't use a comma (,) to separate the 2 clauses. When you start the sentence with the result, the comma is necessary.

Sometimes we use shall, can or may instead of will, for example:
 If it's sunny this afternoon, we can play tennis.



PRACTICE

A- Translate the sentences below:

1- Se as pessoas comem muito, elas engordam.

2- Se eu ficar exposto ao frio, eu pego um resfriado.

3- Cobras picam se elas se assustam.

4- Se os bebês sentem fome, eles choram.

5- As pessoas morrem se elas não comem.

6- O óleo flutua se você o coloca na água.

7- Se o transporte público é eficiente, as pessoas param de usar os carros.

8- A grama fica molhada quando chove.

9- Se ele coloca sal na água, ela fica salgada.

10- As plantas morrem se elas não recebem
água.

11- Se chover, não irei ao parque.

12- Se você estudar bastante, você vai passar na prova.

13- Comprarei algumas pares de sapatos se eu tiver dinheiro.

14- Se ela não sair logo, ela perderá o ônibus.

15- Se eu ganhar na loteria, comprarei uma mansão.

16- Se você quiser, eu posso ir com você.

17- Se eles me chamarem, eu vou pra festa deles.

PRACTICE

B- Match the two columns to make conditional clauses:

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| 1. If I am late for class, | (A) if they don't eat. |
| 2. When he stays up very late, | (B) I always look left and right. |
| 3. People get hungry | (C) my teacher gets angry. |
| 4. If you study hard, | (D) when he is happy. |
| 5. When she watches a movie, | (E) I take a taxi to work. |
| 6. When I cross the street, | (F) he is very tired the next morning. |
| 7. I can't do my homework, | (G) the librarian gets angry. |
| 8. He always smiles | (H) if you want to lose weight. |
| 9. If I miss the bus, | (I) she likes to eat popcorn. |
| 10. When you make lots of noise, | (J) when it rains. |
| 11. Tea tastes sweet | (K) I watch a funny movie. |
| 12. You should eat less | (L) he listens to music. |
| 13. I always take my umbrella | (M) you get good grades in school. |
| 14. When I'm sad, | (N) if you add some sugar. |
| 15. When he cleans the house, | (O) if I don't have my glasses. |

C- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb given:

- 1- If we _____, we _____ there in time. (HURRY, GET)
- 2- I _____ to the doctor unless the pain _____. (NOT GO, INCREASE)
- 3- If you _____ in public places, you _____ into trouble. (SMOKE, GET)
- 4- We _____ for a picnic tomorrow if the weather _____ nice. (GO, STAY)
- 5- Everyone _____ you if you _____ them the truth. (BELIEVE, TELL)
- 6- If he _____, he _____ to work on time. (NOT WAKE UP, NOT GET)
- 7- If she _____ her keys, she _____ angry. (LOSE, BE)
- 8- If the baby _____ a boy, I _____ him Jonathan. (BE, CALL)
- 9- You _____ an accident if you _____ so carelessly. (CAUSE, DRIVE)
- 10- She _____ it if she _____ the truth. (REGRET, NOT TELL)
- 11- If you _____ the house now, you _____ late for the meeting. (NOT LEAVE, BE)
- 12- Margaret _____ to the party unless you _____ her. (NOT COME, INVITE)
- 13- I _____ you with the dishes if you _____ tired. (HELP, BE)
- 14- We _____ any tickets for the performance unless we _____ them in advance. (NOT GET, BUY)

LESSON 28

IF CLAUSE –SECOND CONDITIONAL

Practicing

If I met the president, I would say hello.
If he won the lottery, he would travel the world.
If you had a Ferrari, you would drive really fast.
They would pass the test if they studied.
If he had her number, he would call her.
If I were you, I would do that.
If we traveled to NY, we would visit the Central Park.
If she had enough money, she would buy the company.
If the situation was different, we would understand.
He would be fluent if he lived in England.
If they went to the movies, they would watch the film.
If it was beautiful, they would buy it.
If I were you, I would buy this house.

Praticando

Se eu conhecesse o presidente, diria olá.
Se ele ganhasse na loteria, ele viajaria pelo mundo.
Se você tivesse uma Ferrari, você dirigiria muito rápido.
Eles passariam no teste se estudassem.
Se ele tivesse o número dela, ele ligaria para ela.
Se eu fosse você, faria isso.
Se viajássemos para NY, visitaríamos o Central Park.
Se ela tivesse dinheiro suficiente, ela compraria a empresa.
Se a situação fosse diferente, entenderíamos.
Ele seria fluente se morasse na Inglaterra.
Se eles fossem ao cinema, eles assistiriam ao filme.
Se fosse bonito, eles o comprariam.
Se eu fosse você, compraria esta casa.

Negative

I wouldn't go out if it was dark.
He wouldn't buy the car if he didn't have the money. You wouldn't be so tired if you went to bed earlier. They wouldn't hurt themselves if they didn't fall.
If he didn't have a job, he wouldn't work.
We wouldn't buy anything if we didn't have money. I wouldn't go to the party if I were you.
If we didn't win the game, we wouldn't celebrate.
He wouldn't walk everyday if he had a bike.

Negativo

Eu não sairia se estivesse escuro.
Ele não compraria o carro se não tivesse dinheiro.
Você não estaria tão cansado se fosse para a cama mais cedo.
Eles não se machucariam se não caíssem.
Se ele não tivesse um emprego, ele não iria trabalhar.
Não compraríamos nada se não tivéssemos dinheiro.
Eu não iria à festa se fosse você.
Se não ganhamos o jogo, não comemoraríamos.
Ele não andaria todos os dias se tivesse uma bicicleta.

Interrogative

What would you do if you were me?
Where would they go if they had the chance?
Would she travel if she was on vacation?
If they were here, what would they do?

If they knew, would they tell her?
To where would they move if they could?
If you were rich, what would you buy?
Would we pass if we studied?

Interrogativo

O que você faria se você fosse eu?
Para onde eles iriam se tivessem a chance?
Ela viajaria se estivesse de férias?
Se eles estivessem aqui, o que fariam?
Se eles soubessem, eles diriam a ela?
Para onde eles se mudariam se pudessem?
Se você fosse rico, o que compraria?
Nós passaríamos se estudássemos?

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

Max – What's going on, Joe? I have a question: where would you like to go if you won a free ticket to anywhere?

Joe – Not much, Max. Man, I would go to Cape Cod if I could.

Max – And if you went there, what would you do?

Joe – There are many places to visit and much to do in a place like that. If I knew someone to go with me I would pay for their ticket.

Max – Well, maybe I would go if you paid for my expenses.

Joe – We can discuss this possibility.

Max – I'd love to if you asked my boss.

Joe – I would do that if I had his number.



Conversation 2

Sharon – Son Diana, if you found a cat wandering on your street, would you take it home?

Diana – If it didn't have an owner, then yes, I would!

Sharon – Would your family let you stay with it if you took it?

Diana – Yes, they would. Here at home everybody loves pets, specially cats.

Sharon – I'm asking you because there's this cat right on my street that is wandering every morning. I want to take it home, but my mom said that if I took it home she would punish me.

Diana – Oh, Sharon. Poor kitty. If you can, will you hold it for me? I'll go there and take it.

Sharon – That would be awesome if you did it!



Second conditional

The second conditional is used to imagine present or future situations that are impossible or unlikely in reality.

If you had more money, you would travel more. If + subject + simple past + subject + would + simple present

Condition Result

Answer the following questions with your teacher.

1. If you could change one thing about yourself, what would you change?
2. If you could stay at one age forever, what age would it be?
3. If you won the lottery, what would you do?
4. If you suddenly woke up because your house was on fire, what item would you save first?
5. If you could only eat one food for the rest of your life, what would you choose?
6. If you could meet anyone, dead or alive, who would you choose to meet?
7. If you had to change your name, what name would you choose?
8. If you were the world's best at something, what would you like to be the world's best at?
9. If you could travel in time, would you prefer to see the future or the past?
10. If you had a choice to have no children or ten children, what would you choose?
11. If you could have any job, what job would you like to have?
12. If you didn't need sleep, how would you spend your nights?

PRACTICE

A- Translate the sentences below:

1- Se eu fosse aos Estados Unidos, eu compraria muita coisa lá.

2- O que você faria se ganhasse uma Ferrari?

3- Se eu visse uma cobra na rua, eu sairia correndo.

4- Se ela me falasse como fazer isso, eu faria sem problemas.

5- Ele não compraria todas essas coisas se não precisasse.

6- Eu pintaria minha casa se tivesse tempo livre.

7- Eu iria ao cinema hoje se não tivesse que trabalhar.

8- O que eles fariam se alguém falasse pra eles a verdade?

9- Eu comeria uma pizza se não estivesse de regime.

10- Se eu fosse você, não me preocuparia tanto.

11- Eu dirigiria para Las Vegas se a gasolina não estivesse tão cara.

12- Se essa empresa me contratasse, eu seria o diretor.

13- Se eu tivesse que trabalhar, eu não teria tempo para ficar aqui.

14- Se ele respeitasse mais os patrões, ele não perderia seus empregos.

15- Se morássemos na Espanha, seríamos felizes.

16- Se eu tivesse um milhão de dólares, compraria uma mansão.

17- Se eu fosse para Madrid, eu visitaria os pontos turísticos.

PRACTICE

B- Rewrite the sentences and use the second conditional. Keep the same meaning:

Example

My car is broken down. I won't drive you there.

If my car wasn't out of order, I would drive you there.

1. *I don't know his phone number. I can't contact him.*

If I _____ his phone number, I would contact him.

2. *He is sick. He can't go skiing.*

If he wasn't sick, he _____ skiing.

3. *He doesn't like pasta. He won't eat the spaghetti.*

If he _____ pasta, he would eat the spaghetti.

4. *I travel on my own because I speak English.*

I wouldn't travel on my own if I _____ English.

5. *We don't have enough room in our house. You can't stay with us.*

If we _____ enough room in our house, you could stay with us.

6. *You aren't lucky. You won't win.*

If you were lucky, you _____

7. *I go to bed early because I work very hard.*

I wouldn't go to bed early if I _____ so hard.

8. *I am eighteen. I can vote.*

If I _____ eighteen, I couldn't vote.

9. *Go to Corfu. You will like it.*

If you went to Corfu, you _____ it.

10. *You are anxious. You won't manage it.*

You would manage it if you _____ anxious.

C- Write sentences with the second conditional learned:

1- If I were _____

2- If I had _____

3- If I knew _____

4- If I won _____

5- What would you do if _____ ?

6- Where would you go if _____ ?

7- If they broke _____

8- If we studied _____

LESSON 29

USED TO vs BE USED TO

Verbs

Used to
Be used to

Praticando

I used to ride a bike when I was a kid.
She used to go to the club with her friends.
They used to play in a band.
My parents used to go out at night.
We used to talk on the phone for hours.
It used to work better when it was new.
He used to work for an international company.
I used to walk my dog in the park every morning.
She is used to riding her bike with her daughter.
They are used to doing their grocery every weekend.

I'm used to working overtime.

Negative

We didn't use to swim at the water park. The pool was deep.
She didn't use to ride a bike when she was a kid.
The children aren't used to waking up early.

I'm not used to driving in a big city.
We're not used to working until late.
He isn't used to studying by himself.
They used to buy much chocolate at the candy store.

Interrogative

Did he use to go camping with his cousins?
Are you used to buying at that store over there?
Did you use to take a ride back home?
Did we use to do exercises after dinner?
Are you used to working out at the gym?
Are they used to staying out late?

Is he used to practicing martial arts over the weekend?
Did they use to buy gifts for the whole family?
Did he use to do business with foreigners?

Verbos

Costumava / Costumavam
Estar acostumado a

Praticando

Eu costumava andar de bicicleta quando era criança.
Ela costumava ir ao clube com seus amigos.
Eles costumavam tocar em uma banda.
Meus pais costumavam sair à noite.
Costumávamos falar ao telefone por horas.
Costumava funcionar melhor quando era novo.
Ele trabalhava para uma empresa internacional.
Eu costumava passear com meu cachorro no parque todas as manhãs.
Ela está acostumada a andar de bicicleta com a filha dela.
Eles estão acostumados a fazer suas compras todo fim de semana.
Estou acostumada a trabalhar horas extras.
Estou acostumada a trabalhar horas extras.

Negative

Não costumávamos nadar no parque aquático. A piscina era funda.
Ela não costumava andar de bicicleta quando era criança.
As crianças não estão acostumadas a acordar cedo.

Não estou acostumado a dirigir em uma cidade grande.
Não estamos acostumados a trabalhar até tarde.
Ele não está acostumado a estudar sozinho.
Eles costumavam comprar muito chocolate na confeitaria.

Interrogative

Ele costumava acampar com seus primos?
Você costuma comprar naquela loja ali?
Você costumava pegar uma carona de volta para casa?
Costumávamos fazer exercícios depois do jantar?
Você está acostumado a malhar na academia?
Eles estão acostumados a ficar fora até tarde?

Ele está acostumado a praticar artes marciais no fim de semana?
Eles costumavam comprar presentes para toda a família?
Ele costumava fazer negócios com estrangeiros?

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

Carlos – Adam, are you used to studying a foreign language?

Adam – Yes, I am, Carlos. I used to work for an international company and they fired me because I didn't speak English. So now I'm used to studying more than one language.

Carlos – What a pity that you got fired. But now you might have better opportunities.

Adam – Yes, for sure. At that moment I was so frustrated but then it opened my eyes to the necessity of learning English and other languages.

Carlos – That's so cool. And where are you studying?

Adam – I'm studying at Aliança América. I got so used to studying there. They have a very interesting method. You should study there, as well.

Carlos – Yes, I should. Actually, I'm not used to learning new things, but I should give it a try.

Adam – Absolutely! Companies out there are seeking for qualified people.



Conversation 2

Rose – Hello, Beth. Did you start working in the company where I indicated you?

Beth – Not yet. I'm still thinking about it because they need someone who can sometimes work for long hours and I'm not used to it.

Rose – I understand that, but you get used to it.

Beth – I know. I used to work long hours when I was living in Canada but after I came back I got a little rusty.

Rose – Yeah, you will. I'm used to doing that every week because I need to do some overtime to pay some bills.

Beth – You're tough. Let me know if you need any financial help. I used to have a hard time paying bills but now I can help others.

Rose – I appreciate it, but I got used to it. I'm used to living and doing everything by myself.



Differences between **USED TO**, **BE USED TO** and **GET USED TO**.

We use 'used to + base form' to talk about a past situation that is no longer true. It tells us that there was a repeated action or state in the past which has now changed.

He used to go to the stadium with his family. (*Ele costumava ir ao estádio com sua família.*)

I didn't use to eat pizza, but now I always do it. (*Eu não costumava a comer pizza, mas agora como sempre.*)

Be used to means 'be familiar with' or 'be accustomed to'.

I'm used to going to school on foot. (*Estou acostumado a ir para a escola a pé.*)

She is used to the heat. (*Ela está acostumada com o calor.*)

We use **get used to** to talk about the process of becoming familiar with something.

I don't like this food, but I'll get used to it. (*Eu não gosto dessa comida, mas vou me acostumar.*)

You should get used to this weather. Here's always cold. (*Você precisa se acostumar com esse tempo. Aqui é sempre frio.*)

Be used to' and 'get used to' are followed by a noun, pronoun or the -ing form of a verb, and they can be used to talk about the past, present or future.

PRACTICE

A- Translate the sentences below:

1- Eu costumava comer muito chocolate mas agora estou de dieta.

2- Você costumava ir direto pra casa quando estudava no colégio?

3- Ela costumava falar com seus avós sobre seus estudos.

4- O que você costumava fazer aos domingos quando era criança?

5- Estou acostumado a ficar em casa sozinho quando meus pais saem para trabalhar.

6- Minha mãe está acostumada a ir ao supermercado sozinha.

7- Ele está acostumado a fazer hora extra toda semana.

8- Eles se acostumaram a andar de cavalo.

9- Não me acostumei a viver sem você.

10- Seus pais estão acostumados com suas travessuras.

11- Nós costumávamos fazer uma caminhada no parque quando não era perigoso.

12- Você se acostuma facilmente com as coisas?

13- Não me acostumei com o clima dos Estados Unidos.

14- Eles não eram costumados a andar por muito tempo.

15- Vocês costumavam ir na casa de seus avós no Natal?

16- Eles estão acostumados com o novo chefe.

17- Não me acostumei a acordar cedo.

PRACTICE

B- Change the sentences below into negative and interrogative forms:

1. I used to live in a flat when I was a child.

2. We use to go to the beach every summer.

3. She used to love eating chocolate.

4. He used to smoke.

5. I used to play tennis when I was at school.

6. She used to be able to speak French.

7. He use to play golf every weekend.

8. They both used to have short hair.

9. Julie used to study Portuguese.

C- Answer the questions below:

a. What did you use to do when you were little? _____

b. Where did you use to go at the end of the year? _____

c. Are you used to running over the weekends? _____

d. What are you planning to get used to? _____

e. Did you use to get good grades at school? _____

LESSON 30

QUARTERTEST VI

A- Combine the TWO sentences to ONE to make them relative clauses:

That is the man. I need to talk to him as soon as possible.

The movie is about a doctor. He became the first doctor to get a brain surgery done.

That is the place. I grew up there.

I met a grower. His company exports fruits.

My brother gave me a letter. It was in a large envelope.

B- Translate the sentences below:

1- Se eu trabalhar, eu ganho dinheiro.

2- Se ele comer muito, ele engorda.

3- Se chover, não irei para o show.

4- Se ganharmos na loteria, vamos comprar uma casa nova e um carro novo.

C- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs to make the second conditional:

1- If I _____ (be) you, I _____ (buy) a new suit for the meeting.

2- He _____ (travel) around the world if he _____ (win) the lottery.

3- If we _____ (had) a new chance, we _____ (do) everything differently.

4- If she _____ (live) in Moscow, she _____ (hate) the cold weather.

D- Translate the sentences below:

1- Meus pais costumavam nos levar ao parque de diversão.

2- Não estou acostumado a cozinhar.

3- Eles precisam se acostumar com a nova rotina de trabalho.

4- Você está acostumado a fazer exercícios pela manhã?

LESSON 31

PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

Verbs

I have done.
You have studied.
She has traveled.
He has bought.
It has eaten.
We have watched.
They have walked.

Practicing

I have done my homework.
You have studied English for too long.
She has traveled the world.
He has bought a nice car.
The dog has eaten rice and beans.
We have watched so many action movies.
They have walked in the park for the last weeks.
The company has struggled to stay in business.
The language learning market has grown.

Negative

I haven't done all my errands.
She hasn't gone to any trip lately.
The children haven't been to Disney yet. He hasn't driven a big truck.
We haven't eaten sushi.
They haven't written their reports.
The manager hasn't arrived in the company.

Interrogative

Have you worked in a large company?
Have you ever been to a foreign country?
Has he washed the car?
How have we made all the cakes?
Have they sold their houses?
Have you finished reading the book?
Has he visited many museums?
Have they ever played in a professional team?
Has she seen an UFO?
Where have you been?

Verbos

Eu fiz. / Eu tenho feito.
Você estudou. / Você tem estudado.
Ela viajou. / Ela tem viajado.
Ele comprou. / Ele tem comprado.
Ele(a) comeu. / Ele(a) tem comido.
Nós assistimos. / Nós temos assistido.
Eles(as) caminharam. / Eles(as) têm caminhado.

Praticando

Eu fiz meu dever de casa.
Você tem estudado inglês por tempo demais.
Ela viajou o mundo.
Ele comprou um carro legal.
O cachorro comeu arroz e feijão.
Assistimos a tantos filmes de ação.
Eles caminharam no parque nas últimas semanas.
A empresa tem lutado para se manter aberta.
O mercado de idiomas cresceu.

Negativo

Eu não fiz todas as minhas tarefas.
Ela não foi a nenhuma viagem ultimamente.
As crianças ainda não foram à Disney.
Ele não dirigiu um caminhão grande.
Não comemos sushi.
Eles não escreveram seus relatórios.
O gerente não chegou na empresa.

Interrogativo

Você já trabalhou em uma grande empresa?
Você já esteve em um país estrangeiro?
Ele lavou o carro?
Como fizemos todos os bolos?
Eles venderam suas casas?
Você terminou de ler o livro?
Ele visitou muitos museus?
Eles já jogaram em uma equipe profissional?
Ela viu um OVNI?
Onde você esteve?

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

Henry – Pete, have you ever been to a foreign country?

Pete – Yes I have, Henry. I have traveled to many countries so far. **Henry**

– That's so interesting. Which countries have you ever been to? **Pete** –

I've been to Canada, England, the USA, Brazil and many others.

Henry – I envy you, Pete. I haven't been out of the country. So far, what I have mostly done is to travel to a few states inside the country.

Pete – You should try to take your family someday and go abroad. It's an amazing experience.

Henry – I bet it is. I've heard people saying that Mexico has some beautiful views and a nice weather. I would love to take my family there and visit its shores.

Pete – Yeah. Plan your trip in advance and everything's going to work out nicely.



Conversation 2

Rose – Beth, I haven't received the sales report for this week. Have you written it?

Beth – I haven't done it yet because I'm waiting for the system update. There're still some salespeople who haven't put it through.

Rose – As soon as they do it, send me the report so we can plan for next week.

Beth – Yes, ma'am. By the way, there are some products which haven't been sold due to the current exchange rate. What should we do?

Rose – Costs of production have gone up and it's been hard to keep products in stock. Crosscheck the prices and, if you see that we won't lose money, sell them with a discount.

Beth – Right away. Is there anything else you need me to do?

Rose – That'll do it. I haven't planned my schedule, so I need to check it!

Present perfect structure.

Subject + have/has + past participle + complement

Example:

I have been to many places (*Estive em muitos lugares.*)

He has studied English for 10 years. (*Ele tem estudado inglês por 10 anos.*)

Here are some of the usages of the PRESENT PERFECT TENSE:

1 For an action that happened in the past but whose results are obvious in the PRESENT.

Peter has washed his car. (*Peter lavou o carro dele.*)

2 For an action that has JUST finished.

I've just arrived from work. (*Achei de chegar do trabalho.*)

3 For an action that started in the past and hasn't finished.

I have lived here for 10 years. (*Moro aqui há 10 anos.*)

4 For experiences we have/haven't lived.

I haven't gone sailing yet. (*Eu ainda não velejei.*)

5 For an action that happened in unspecified time.

The children cleaned their room. (*A criança limpou o quarto delas.*)

PRACTICE

A- Use the words and phrases to write information questions in the present perfect:

1. How long / you / live / in this town?

2. Where / you / be / lately?

3. How many people / she / invite / for the party?

4. Who / be / to Canada?

5. Why / you / choose / this car?

6. How long / Rose / live / here?

7. What / you / cook / for lunch?

8. How much / you / spend / this week?

B- Complete these questions with the past participles of the verbs in the box. Then answer the questions:

Ex: Have you ever studied Spanish? Yes, I have / No, I haven't.

be eat find fly meet ride sleep

1- Have you ever _____ on television? **Answer:** _____

2- Have you ever _____ a horse? **Answer:** _____

3- Have you ever _____ Indian food? **Answer:** _____

4- Have you ever _____ a famous person? **Answer:** _____

5- Have you ever _____ in a helicopter? **Answer:** _____

6- Have you ever _____ money in the street? **Answer:** _____

7- Have you ever _____ over a friend's house? **Answer:** _____

P RACTICE

C- Choose the best answer to complete each sentence:

1. She's been a teacher all her life, .
a. and she loved her job
b. and she loves her job
2. I've traveled to Europe a lot, and in 2001 .
a. I've gone to Africa
b. I went to Africa
3. I've had that car for five years, .
a. and it never breaks down
b. and I sold it
4. We haven't eaten at the Greek restaurant yet, .
a. so we tried it last night
b. so we want to try it soon
5. We haven't solved the problem yet, .
a. so we gave up
b. but we aren't giving up
6. Pedro is one of my best friends; .
a. I've known him for a long time
b. I knew him for a long time

D- Translate the sentences below using the present perfect tense:

1- Onde você esteve hoje?

2- Terminei de fazer todo meu dever de casa.

3- Fui para Alemanha muitas vezes nos últimos anos.

4- Eles foram ao parque.

5- O avião acabou de aterrissar.

6 Não damos uma festa faz muito tempo.

7 Não tem chovido esses dias.

LESSON 32

PRESENT PERFECT TENSE– SINCE / FOR

We can use the present perfect tense to describe present activities that started in the past. In this case, to mention the time duration we use the words 'for' and 'since'.

We use for to talk about the period of time up to the present.

E.g., for four years, for two days.

I have worked here for 15 years. (Tenho trabalhado aqui por 15 anos.)

We use since to talk about the time when an activity started. This can be a date, a day, a month, a time or an event.

Practicing

I have had this car for 20 years.

He has had this attitude since his mom passed away. He's known her for decades.

They have been sick since this morning.

The pandemic has happened since March 2020.

We've been here for three hours.

It has rained since yesterday.

She has lived in Boston since she left home.

I have ridden horses since I was a kid.

Negative

I haven't seen my family since last year.

The children haven't played computer games for 2 weeks.

We haven't been to the mall for a year.

They haven't taken any vacations since the new boss.

We haven't talked since our last fight.

She hasn't slept well for 2 days.

He hasn't played again since he lost the bet.

The faucet hasn't been leaky since he fixed it.

Interrogative

Have you spoken English since you were a kid?

Have they worked on the project very long?

For how long have you studied English?

Have we bought any merchandise since May?

Has it controlled the market since the last crisis?

Has he been able to work since yesterday?

Have you driven as a professional for months?

Praticando

Eu tenho esse carro há 20 anos.

Ele tem essa atitude desde que a mãe dele faleceu.

Ela a conhece há décadas.

Eles estão doentes desde esta manhã.

A pandemia tem acontecido desde março de 2020.

Estamos aqui há três horas.

Chove desde ontem.

Ela mora em Boston desde que saiu de casa.

Eu ando a cavalo desde que era criança.

Negativo

Não vejo minha família desde o ano passado.

As crianças não jogam jogos de computador há 2 semanas.

Faz um ano que não vamos ao shopping.

Eles não tiraram férias desde o novo chefe.

Não conversamos desde nossa última briga.

Ela não tem dormido bem por 2 dias.

Ele não jogou novamente desde que perdeu a aposta.

A torneira não tem vazado desde que ele a consertou.

Interrogativo

Você fala inglês desde criança?

Eles têm trabalhado no projeto por muito tempo?

Há quanto tempo você estuda inglês?

Temos comprado essa mercadoria desde maio?

Isso tem controlado o mercado desde a última crise?

Ele tem conseguido trabalhar desde ontem?

Você dirige como profissional há meses?

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

John – Pete, for how long have you driven this car?

Pete – I've driven it for 10 years now. And it's still running well.

John – Aren't you afraid of it breaking down on the road?

Pete – Not really. I've taken it to the mechanic every month since last year, so it seems to be perfect.

John – Well, you shouldn't always trust your mechanic. It's a machine and it can let you down.

Pete – I know but, it has been with me since my dad moved back to Brazil.

John – Yeah, but when he gave you, it was already old.

Pete – I know. I've thought about buying a new one since last month, but, on the flip side, I know I would miss it. It's old but it runs well.

Conversation 2

Mary – Sharon, how long have you worked for us?

Sharon – Mrs. Mary, I've worked here for you for about 3 years.

Mary – And since then, have you changed positions?

Sharon – Yes, I have. I've changed twice.

Mary – How long have you been in your current position?

Sharon – I've been in this position since January.

Mary – Ok. I have a new position for you. From tomorrow on you'll be working directly with me. I need someone who I can trust and there's no one else besides you.

Sharon – I'm very grateful for the opportunity. I won't disappoint you!

Here are some common irregular verbs to be memorized. Remember: we always form the present perfect using the past participle of the verb.

Base form (Present) / Preterite (Past simple) / Past participle

be (is, am, are)	was, were	been	feel	felt	felt
become	became	become	fight	fought	fought
begin	began	begun	find	found	found
break	broke	broken	fly	flew	flown
bring	brought	brought	forget	forgot	forgotten
build	built	built	forgive	forgave	forgiven
burn	burned/ burnt	burned/ burnt	freeze	froze	frozen
buy	bought	bought	get	got	gotten
catch	caught	caught	give	gave	given
choose	chose	chosen	go	went	gone
come	came	come	have	had	had
cost	cost	cost	hear	heard	heard
cut	cut	cut	hurt	hurt	hurt
do	did	done	keep	kept	kept
draw	drew	drawn	know	knew	known
dream			leave	left	left
	dreamed/ dreamt	dreamed/ dreamt	lend	lent	lent
drive	drove	driven	let	let	let
drink	drank	drunk	lose	lost	lost
eat	ate	eaten	make	made	made
fall	fell	fallen			

PRACTICE

- Complete these time expressions and time clauses with for or since and then make sentences with them:

A

1. three days. _____
2. 3 o'clock _____
3. a long time _____
4. a moment _____
5. last month _____
6. a month _____
7. he was a boy _____
8. 1988 _____

B- Complete the sentences below with FOR or SINCE:

1. I've worked at this company _____ five months.
2. That restaurant has been open _____ this month.
3. Martin has lived there _____ 2012.
4. It has rained _____ a long time.
5. The radio has been on _____ five o'clock.
6. I have wanted to be a lawyer _____ I was a kid.
7. Jeff has studied at this university _____ a week.
8. The telephones have been sold _____ yesterday.
9. They have been married _____ three months.
10. My uncle has been in New York _____ last Tuesday.
11. The plumber has worked here _____ 8 months.
12. I've had this job _____ June.
13. I haven't seen my friend _____ last week.
14. We've been without sleep _____ an hour.
15. I haven't eaten sushi _____ several months.
16. I have studied English at Aliança _____ last year.
17. My bike has been broken _____ a long time.

PRACTICE

C- Choose the correct preposition for each of the sentences:

1. We haven't seen him the summer.

- a) since b) for c) from

2. I have been here three weeks.

- a) since b) for c) from

3. We had our party 8:00 PM until 10:00 PM.

- a) since b) for c) from

4. I have been sick Sunday.

- a) since b) for c) from

5. They have been sick three days.

- a) since b) for c) from

6. I should be ready 30 minutes.

- a) Since b) for c) in

7. Paul has not seen Jenny two days.

- a) since b) for c) in

8. She has slept well ten hours.

- a) since b) for c) to

9. My sister will be here two hours.

- a) since b) for c) to

10. I haven't drunk anything this morning.

- a) since b) for c) in

D- Answer the questions below:

1- How long have you studied English? _____

2- How long have you been awake? _____

3- How long have you had your current car? _____

4- How long have you been married? ? _____

5- How long have you lived in your house? _____

LESSON 33

ADVERBS WITH THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

Adverbs

Always
Never
Already
Just
Still
Yet

Advérbios

Sempre
Nunca
Já
Apenas / Agora mesmo
Ainda
Já / Ainda

Practicing

I have always wanted to be a musician.
You've never sung professionally in a band.
They've already done the homework.
We've just arrived from our trip to Los Angeles.
She has never been to any country in Europe.
It's always been this way. It needs to be changed.
He's just gone to the bank.
It's never been this way before. Something is wrong.
He's already cooked dinner. Let's eat.
They've just said that you're going away for while.
It's the first time that I've ever eaten sushi.

Praticando

Eu sempre quis ser músico.
Você nunca cantou profissionalmente em uma banda.
Eles já fizeram a lição de casa.
Acabamos de chegar de nossa viagem a Los Angeles.
Ela nunca esteve em nenhum país na Europa.
Sempre foi assim. Precisa ser mudado.
Ele acabou de ir ao banco.
Nunca foi assim antes. Algo está errado.
Ele já preparou o jantar. Vamos comer.
Eles acabaram de dizer que você vai sair por um tempo.
É a primeira vez que como sushi.

Negative

I still haven't done the dishes.
I haven't done the dishes yet.
We haven't been to any rock concerts yet.
She still hasn't forgiven him for doing that.
He still hasn't arrived from work. I'm worried.
The boss hasn't given me a raise yet.
They still haven't delivered the packages we bought.
We haven't figured out how to fix the problem yet.

Negativo

Eu ainda não lavei a louça.
Eu ainda não lavei a louça.
Não fomos a nenhum show de rock ainda.
Ela ainda não o perdoou por fazer aquilo.
Ele ainda não chegou do trabalho. Estou preocupada.
O chefe ainda não me deu um aumento.
Eles ainda não entregaram os pacotes que compramos.
Ainda não descobrimos como resolver o problema.

Interrogative

Have you ever spoken English to a native speaker?
Have they ever worked on a project for so long?
Have you already done your homework?
Has she delivered all the reports already?
Has Mike visited the National Museum yet?
Has it ever worked properly?
Have we met the owner of this company yet?

Interrogativo

Você já falou inglês com um falante nativo?
Eles já trabalharam em um projeto por tanto tempo?
Você já fez sua lição de casa?
Ela já entregou todos os relatórios?
Mike já visitou o Museu Nacional?
Já funcionou apropriadamente?
Já conhecemos o dono desta empresa?

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

Mike – Jack, have you ever given a public speech?

Jack – Yes, I have. I've already done that. In fact, I've done it a few times. Have you?

Mike – No, I haven't. I haven't done it yet, but I was required to give one next week.

Jack – Well, you've already spoken in public, remember? We've both spoken to our class already.

Mike – We can't consider that because it was to our class. I'm afraid of speaking in public, and besides that, I still haven't learned how to speak politely in front of an audience.

Jack – Let's ask our oratory teacher for some tips.

Mike – That's the case. He is the one who required me to give the speech.

Jack – Oh, boy. Now I understand why you're worried.



Conversation 2

Jenny – Hi Bruna, are there any messages for me?

Bruna – Yes, Mrs. Jenny. There are some. First, the landscaping company still hasn't mown the grass because two of their workers are off. Second, Diego has already done the calls you asked him, but he hasn't returned to the office yet. Third, the tickets for your business trip are on your desk. I've already set up everything for the trip.

Jenny – Thank you for the update, Bruna. About the landscaping company, as they haven't mown the grass yet, cancel the order for this week.. Also, have you already ordered my coffee?

Bruna – Sure, I have. It's on its way.

Jenny – I haven't had anything this morning yet, so, as soon as it gets here, bring it to my desk, please. And let me know when Diego arrives. There is still some stuff I haven't been able to get done, and I need some help from Diego.

Bruna – Ok, Mrs. Jenny. I'll let you know.

Read the paragraph below.

I've always enjoyed movies. When I was in high school, my friend and I decided to take a class on filmmaking and we learned how to make short movies. It was so much fun. So it became kind of a hobby. We've made like 20 of them now. They're only 5 minutes long but take hours of work. And we've entered in a couple local competitions. We haven't won anything, but we've just submitted our latest short movie to a national film festival anyway.

Now, based on the paragraph you've just read, write a paragraph on your own using the present perfect tense.

PRACTICE

A- Answer the questions with true information. Add an adverb where

necessary: 1- What's something exciting you've done?

2- What's something scary you've done?

3- What's something boring you've done in the last month?

4- How many times have you been late to class recently?

5- What country have you always wanted to visit?

6- What kind of food have you never tried before?

7- What movie have you seen several times?

8- What's something you've never done, but always wanted to do?

B- Complete the conversations with the simple past or present perfect:

1. A Have you ever gone (go) cliff diving?

B - No, I _____. It sounds too scary! _____ you _____ (do) it?

A - Yeah, _____ (go) last weekend.

B - Wow! You're brave. How _____ (be) it? A- It was incredible! I _____ (love) it.

2. A - I _____ never _____ (travel) alone. How about you?

B - No, but I _____ always _____ (want) to. I'm sure it's exciting.

A - I think so, too. Do you know my friend Jill? She _____ (take) a hiking trip alone last year.

B - I know. I _____ (speak) to her about it last week.

3. A - _____ you never _____ (try) horseback riding?

B - Yeah. I actually _____ (do) it once several year ago.

A - Really? _____ you _____ (like) it?

B - No, not really. It _____ (be) very scary.

A - Oh, too bad. I go all the time. I _____ (get) really good at it..

PRACTICE

C- Choose the word for each of the sentences:

1. We _____ haven't seen him today.
a) already b) still c) yet
2. I have _____ wanted to go to the National Park.
a) always b) still c) yet
3. We haven't had our birthday party _____.
a) still b) never c) yet
4. Have you _____ written a book?
a) still b) never c) ever
5. They have gotten late to class, unfortunately.
a) never b) always c) still
6. My parents have _____ arrived from grocery shopping.
a) still b) yet c) just
7. Paul has _____ sent me the answers for the science test. Now I can do it!
a) just b) still c) never
8. She _____ hasn't traveled to her hometown.
a) already b) yet c) still
9. My sister has gotten her birthday gift. Why haven't I?
a) yet b) already c) never
10. I've _____ been to any country in Europe.
a) yet b) always c) never D-

Answer the questions below:

- 1- Have you ever ridden a Kawasaki ZX11? _____
- 2- Have you ever driven for more than 15 hours without stopping? _____
- 3- Have you ever eaten an exotic food? _____
- 4- Have you ever lived abroad? _____

LESSON 34

PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS

Verbs

I've been working.
You have been studying.
He has been training.
She has been traveling.
It has been leaking.
They have been sleeping.
We have been talking.

Verbs

Venho trabalhando.
Você vem estudando.
Ele tem treinado.
Ela vem viajando.
Vem vazando.
Eles vêm dormindo.
Viemos conversando.

Practicing

I've been thinking about learning another language.
You've been driving for 5 hours in a row.
He has been struggling with this machine for days.
She has been dealing with foreign companies.
It has been making noise for a while.
They have been cooking for the party since yesterday.
We've been running this business for a long time.
I've been working for this company since 1998.

Praticando

Venho pensando em aprender outro idioma.
Você vem dirigindo há 5 horas consecutivas.
Ele vem tendo problemas com esta máquina por dias.
Ela vem lidando com empresas estrangeiras.
Vem fazendo barulho há um tempo.
Eles vêm cozinhando para a festa desde ontem.
Viemos administrando esse negócio há muito tempo.
Tenho trabalhado para esta empresa desde 1998.

Negative

I haven't been waiting here for too long.
You haven't been expecting to be hired.
He hasn't been drinking too much water due to his illness.
She hasn't been planning her wedding.
He hasn't been calling his customers.
They haven't been traveling this year.
We haven't been studying presentially at school in person.
It hasn't been working properly.

Negativo

Eu não venho esperando aqui há tempo demais.
Você não vem esperando ser contratado.
Ele não vem bebendo muita água devido à sua doença.
Ela não vem planejando o casamento dela.
Ele não vem telefonando para seus clientes.
Eles não vêm viajando este ano.
Não viemos estudando presencialmente na escola.
Não vem funcionando apropriadamente.

Interrogative

Have you been going out lately?
Have they been hanging out with their friends?
Has he been wandering without knowing what to do?
Has she been talking to her family in the last days?
Have they been broadcasting around the world?
Have we been eating healthy lately?
Have they been feeling sick after coming back home?

Interrogativo

Você vem saindo ultimamente?
Eles vêm saindo com seus amigos?
Ele vem andando vagando sem saber o que fazer?
Ela vem falando com a família nos últimos dias?
Eles vêm transmitindo para todo o mundo?
Viemos comendo de forma saudável ultimamente?
Eles vêm se sentindo doentes depois de voltarem para casa?

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

Mike – Jack, how long have you been taking this medicine?

Jack – I've been taking it since I was diagnosed with diabetes.

Mike – Oh, Jack, I feel sorry for you. It must be annoying, right?

Jack – Not really, I just need to be careful when eating. I've been following the description and as far as I don't eat much sugar, I'll be fine.

Mike – Yes, you're right. I've been reading some articles about diabetes and I found out that if you control the sugar level on your blood, then you don't need to be worried.

Jack – Exactly. And I haven't been eating anything that could cause any damage on me though.

Mike – Jack, I've been planning a barbecue for the next Sunday. Would you like to come?

Jack – Yeah, that would be great.



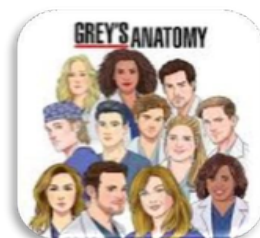
Conversation 2

Debby – Hi, Susie. I'm looking for a nice TV show to watch. What have you been watching lately? **Susie** – Hi, Debby. I've been watching a show called Grey's Anatomy. As you know, I study medicine, so sometimes I learn something new from the show.

Debby – Oh, that's wonderful. I've been watching a Korean TV show but it's kind of hard to understand.

Susie – Try Grey's Anatomy. Besides being so cool it's also educational. Obviously, I haven't been practicing what I learned there because most of it is sci-fi, but I enjoy it.

Debby – Awesome, Susie. I'll follow your advice. I've been thinking about studying medicine as well. I think I can be a good doctor. But I haven't been getting good grades at school. I must study more.



Susie – Yes, med school demands a lot from you.

The usages and differences of Present Perfect Tense.

SIMPLE TENSE - In general, we use the present perfect when we want to talk about unfinished actions, states or habits that started in the past and still happen in the present. Usually we use it to say 'how long' and we need 'since' or 'for' to express the duration.

–I have done my homework. (*Fiz meu dever de casa.*)

–You have worked here since 1994. (*Você trabalha aqui desde 1994.*)

CONTINUOUS TENSE - We use the present perfect continuous when we want to say that an unfinished action started in the past and continues in the present. We often use this with 'for' and 'since'.

–I've been living in Boston for two years. (*Tenho morado em Boston por dois anos.*)

–She's been working here since 2004. (*Ela trabalha aqui desde 2004.*)

Read the text below and discuss the usages of the present perfect tense with your teacher.

Mr. David is a very busy salesman. He has been working at Sam's Club for 8 years and he hasn't missed a single day at work. This month, he has sold a little less than he usually does. Due to the pandemic, he hasn't been selling as much as he expected.

His boss has been putting a lot of pressure on him to achieve the goals, but it has been really hard to do it. He has been concerning about that and doesn't know what to do at the moment.

The pandemic has caused many people to lose their jobs and Mr. David is worried.

PRACTICE

A- Complete the sentences below with the appropriate conjugation and structure:

- 1 - My sister _____ (sleep) all day.

- 2 - _____ (Greg do) his homework?

- 3 - It _____ (rain) _____ weeks.
- 4 - I got a bad grade because I _____ (not study) hard.
- 5 - They _____ (drive) _____ two hours.
- 6 - Mary and Jerry _____ (run) marathons _____ they were young.
- 7 - _____ (you wait) _____ a long time?

- 8 - Where _____ (you spend) your summer holidays?
- 9 - Who _____ (eat) my cookies?
- 10 - _____ (you work) hard?

- 11 - I _____ (think) about quitting my job.
- 12 - Why _____ (you get up) so early recently?

B- Translate the sentences below:

1- Meus irmãos vêm procurando por mim o dia todo.

2- Os jogadores estão molhados porque vêm jogando na chuva desde cedo.

3- Eles vêm pintando o quarto deles por 3 horas.

4- Ele vem morando na casa ao lado por 6 meses e eu não havia percebido.

5- Por quanto tempo você vem esperando pelo médico?

6- Por que você não vêm comendo carne ultimamente?

PRACTICE

C- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in parentheses:

- 1- I _____ finally _____ (solve) the problem.
- 2- What _____ recently? (you / do) Anything interesting?
- 3- My brother _____ (buy) a new motorbike. It looks great.
- 4- _____ (you / swim)? Your hair looks wet.
- 5- Oh, There you are! I _____ (look) for you everywhere.
- 6- Sorry we are late. How long _____ (you / wait)?
- 7- I _____ (know) Peter for a long time.
- 8- My friends _____ (run) for two hours already.
- 9- I _____ (never / understand) math's and physics.
- 10- The children are tired because they _____ (play) all day.
- 11- Susan _____ (never / believe) in ghosts and fairies.
- 12- I _____ (write) emails all day.
- 13- John _____ (never / see) this film before.
- 14- What on earth _____ (you / do)? You're covered in mud.
- 15- _____ (you / ever / see) the sunrise from here? I heard it's incredibly beautiful.
- 16- How long _____ (he / learn) English?
- 17- I _____ (just / speak) to my cousins. They told me the news.
- 18- I'm sorry. Monica is not here. She _____ (go) out.
- 19- We're really tired because we _____ (train) for the marathon since eight o'clock.
- 20- _____ (you / finish) doing your homework yet?
- 21- The students _____ (review) for their Chinese exam for two hours.
- 22- Peter, why are you sweating? Because I _____ (clean) the house.
- 23- Is the lawn finished? Yes, Jefferson _____ (mow) the grass.
- 24- It's still raining. It _____ (rain) for hours.
- 25- How much money _____ (you / spend) this week?
- 26- How long _____ (you / do) this activity?

LESSON 35

QUARTER TEST VII

A- Translate the sentences below:

1- Tenho trabalhado na redecoreação da minha casa e ainda não terminei.

—

2- Ele esqueceu o telefone dele, então ele não consegue ligar pra ela.

—

3- Está chovendo o dia todo. Parece até que a chuva nunca vai parar.

—

4- Fiz bastante trabalho esta manhã e é apenas 11h.

—

5- Ela acabou de terminar o dever de casa que o professor deixou para ela.

—

6- Estamos estudando para as provas desde outubro. Espero estarmos preparados até lá.

—

7- Venho procurando pelas crianças a manhã toda. Não sei onde elas podem estar.

—

8- Já assistimos a esse filme antes, então não precisamos assistir.

—

9- Venho esperando por você o dia todo. Por onde esteve?

—

10- Michel já pilotou um avião antes, mas não sei se ele será capaz de pilotar um tão grande.

—

11- Decidi não aceitar a oferta de trabalho.

—

12- Já estive duas vezes na Índia e cada viagem foi uma experiência inesquecível.

—

13- Patrício reprovou duas vezes no teste de direção. Ele deve se preparar melhor.

LESSON 36

REPORTED SPEECH

Praticando

She said that she always ate an apple in the morning.
He explained that he was watching the news.
He said that Bill had worked last week.
He told me that he had been to England.
He explained that he had just arrived from work.
They complained that they had been waiting for hours.
They told me that they had been living in Miami.
He said that he would be in San Francisco on Monday.
She said that she would be taking the bus next week.
She said that her mom had cooked dinner.
He said that his brother had watched a movie.
She said that her family had just eaten dinner.

Negative

He explained that he wasn't reading a book.
He said that Bill hadn't traveled that day.
He explained that he hadn't just arrived from work.
He said that he wouldn't be in San Francisco on Monday.
She said that she wouldn't be on a diet again.
He said that Bill hadn't bought that car.
She said that her mom had never been nice.
He said that his girlfriend hadn't contributed a lot.
She said that her family hadn't always helped.

Interrogative

He asked me what I was doing.
She asked me what my name was.
Tom asked me how my family was.
My mom asked me where I had gone.
The teacher asked him why he had missed the class.
I asked them what they had been doing.
He asked her how he would help her.
We asked him how he could come to school.
They asked how the trip was.

Praticando

Ela disse que sempre comia uma maçã pela manhã.
Ele explicou que estava assistindo ao noticiário.
Ele disse que Bill havia trabalhado na semana passada.
Ele me disse que tinha estado na Inglaterra.
Ele explicou que tinha acabado de chegar do trabalho.
Eles reclamaram que vinham esperando por horas.
Eles me disseram que vinham morando em Miami.
Ele disse que estaria em San Francisco na segunda-feira.
Ela disse que estaria pegando o ônibus na próxima semana.
Ela disse que sua mãe havia feito o jantar.
Ele disse que seu irmão havia assistido a um filme.
Ela disse que sua família havia acabado de jantar.

Negative

Ele explicou que ele não estava lendo um livro.
Ele disse que Bill não tinha viajado naquele dia.
Ele explicou que não tinha acabado de chegar do trabalho.

Ele disse que não estaria em San Francisco na segunda-feira.
Ela disse que não faria dieta novamente.
Ele disse que Bill não tinha comprado aquele carro.
Ela disse que sua mãe nunca havia sido legal.
Ele disse que sua namorada não havia contribuído muito.
Ela disse que sua família nem sempre ajudou.

Interrogative

Ele me perguntou o que eu estava fazendo.
Ela me perguntou qual era o meu nome.
Tom me perguntou como estava minha família.
Minha mãe me perguntou para onde eu tinha ido.
A professora perguntou por que ele havia perdido a aula.
Eu perguntei o que eles vinham fazendo.
Ele perguntou a ela como ele a ajudaria.
Perguntamos a ele como ele poderia vir para a escola.
Eles perguntaram como foi a viagem.

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

Bruce – Natan, I'm looking for Davi's message but I can't find it. What did he say about the test?

Natan – He said he had prepared the test to be applied next week?

Bruce – What do you mean by 'next week'? All the students had said they wouldn't be prepared until next month due to the high amount of subjects.

Natan – I know, I'm not happy about that either. But we've got to follow the rules.

Bruce – Ok, I need you to tell him we can't take the test next week. It has to be next month.

Natan – Ok, I'll do it. (Calling David...) Hello, David. Bruce said we couldn't take the text next week. We have been studying for other tests and it's just too much in this moment.

Davi – Natan, I've told you all to be prepared. I've been telling you to study harder and to let me know if you have any concerns.

Conversation 2

Sandra – Hi, Donna. I received a message from one of our customers. He said he couldn't make the down payment due to a power shortage in his town.

Donna – Couldn't he have done it in another city? I was told to release the good only upon the down payment.

Sandra – The bank manager said he would do anything to solve the issue as quickly as possible.

Donna – Ok, let's wait then.

Sandra – By the way, what should I tell him about the shipment?

Donna – Tell him I'll ensure the goods will be shipped out as soon as I have the confirmation of the down payment.

Sandra – Mr. Riggs, Mrs. Donna said she would ensure the goods would be shipped out as soon as she has the confirmation of the down payment. We apologize for any inconveniences.

Reported speech, also known as indirect speech, is used to report what someone says.

DIRECT SPEECH	REPORTED SPEECH	SPEAKER'S WORDS	REPORTED STATEMENT
Present continuous	Past continuous	Tomorrow	The next day/the following day
Present simple	Past simple	Yesterday	The day before
Present perfect	Past perfect	Here	There
Past perfect	No change	This/that	The
Past simple	Past perfect	This morning	That
Past continuous	No change (usually)	Today	That morning
Shall/Will	Would	Tonight	That day
Can	Could	Next/on Tuesday	That night
Could	No change	Last Tuesday	The following Tuesday
Must	Had to or no change	The day after tomorrow	The previous Tuesday
Should	No change	Ago	In two days' time
Ought to	No change		Before/previously
May	Might		
Imperative	Infinitive		

PRACTICE

A- Transform the direct speech into reported speech:

1. "He works at a school called Aliança América."
He said _____
2. "We went to a nice restaurant last night."
She told me _____
3. "I'm coming to town next week!"
She said _____
4. "I was waiting for the food when he called me."
She told me _____
5. "I've never been to California before."
She said _____
6. "I didn't go to the party because it was raining."
She told me _____
7. "Jennifer will come after the party."
She said _____
8. "He hasn't had lunch yet."
She told me _____
9. "I can do the chores tomorrow."
She said _____
10. "You should take some time off."
She told me _____
11. "I don't like to go to noisy places."
She told me _____
12. "I won't drive to work tomorrow."
She said _____
13. "She's living in Paris for a few months."
She said _____
14. "I visited my relatives last weekend."
She told me _____
15. "She hasn't eaten sushi before."
She said _____
16. "I haven't been to London. I heard it's a beautiful city."
She said _____
17. "They would buy a new house if they could."
She said _____
18. "I'll do the cleaning tomorrow. I'm too tired today."
She told me _____

PRACTICE

B- Transform the direct questions into reported questions:

1. Is John at home?

She asked me if _____

2. Am I late?

She asked me if _____

3. Is it cold outside?

She asked me if _____

4. Are they in Paris?

She asked me if _____

5. Is the bus stop, near the shopping center?

She asked me if _____

6. Is the milk fresh?

She asked me if _____

7. Are you a doctor?

She asked me if _____

8. Are James and Lucy from France?

She asked me if _____

9. Is my brother in the garden?

She asked me if _____

10. Is the weather good in Shanghai in the summer?

She asked me if _____

11. Does Julie drink tea?

She asked me if _____

12. Do you like chocolate?

She asked me if _____

13. Do they own a flat?

She asked me if _____

14. Does David go to the cinema often?

She asked me if _____

15. Do the children study Chinese?

She asked me if _____

16. Do they go on holiday every summer?

She asked me if _____

17. Does your sister live in Stockholm?

She asked me if _____

18. Do I talk too much?

She asked me if _____

LESSON 37

PASSIVE VOICE

Voices of the verb

Active voice

People build houses every day.

Passive voice

Every day, houses are built by people.

Practicing

English is spoken by people.

Machines are made by men.

The house was built last year.

The package is sent by the post office.

The fruits are being eaten by the children.

A song is being sung by the band.

A table has been made by the carpenter.

Negative

Rice isn't grown in Brazil.

This painting wasn't painted by the artist.

These buildings weren't built by the company.

Ink hasn't been used only for writing.

The geometry paperwork hasn't been done.

Teachers haven't been treated well in our country.

The note wasn't written by me.

These lessons are going to be explained by the teacher.

The inhabitants will be helped by the government.

It was being washed because it was really dirty.

Interrogative

Was the cake made by my mom?

Will the classes be canceled this week?

Has the work been finished by you?

When will the results be announced by the lab? Have they been invited by you?

What was said by him?

Can it be cured by the doctors? Were you recognized by her?

Is this work being done by you?

Vozes verbais

Voz ativa

As pessoas constroem casas todos os dias.

Voz passiva

Todos os dias as casas são construídas por pessoas.

Praticando

Ingles é falado por pessoas.

Máquinas são feitas por homens.

A casa foi construída no ano passado.

O pacote é enviado pela agência postal.

As frutas estão sendo comidas pelas crianças.

Uma música está sendo cantada pela banda.

Uma mesa foi feita pelo marceneiro.

Negativo

Arroz não é cultivado no Brasil.

Esta pintura não foi pintada pelo artista.

Esses edifícios não foram construídos pela empresa.

Tinta não tem sido usada apenas para escrever.

O trabalho de geometria não foi feito.

Os professores não têm sido tratados em nosso país.

O recado não foi escrito por mim.

As lições serão explicadas pela professora.

Os habitantes serão ajudados pelo governo.

Estava sendo lavado porque estava bem sujo.

Interrogative

O bolo foi feito pela minha mãe?

As aulas serão canceladas esta semana?

O trabalho foi concluído por você?

Quando os resultados serão anunciados pelo laboratório?

Eles foram convidados por você?

O que foi dito por ele?

Pode ser curado pelos médicos?

Você foi reconhecido por ela?

Este trabalho está sendo feito por você?

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

Oliver – Jack, did you see the news yesterday?

Jack – Not really. What happened?

Oliver – They said the businesses in town will be closed for a few weeks due to the pandemic. It's awful. How are we going to survive?

Jack – Indeed. Something must be done. We have our expenses.

Oliver – Workers should be paid during this period.

Jack – Yes, they should. Without the sales, it's impossible for us to keep paying them. Another thing is that many taxes are being charged against us.

Oliver – Well, all we can do is wait to see what will be done for all of us.



Conversation 2

Betty – Nanda, there are a few workers who are going on a strike. What should we do?

Nanda – Well, production can't be paused. Get new workers and keep the production running.

Betty – Ok, I'll do that. But there will be extra expenses with it.

Nanda – Ok. Resources are being transferred this afternoon, so we have to recover them in the end!

Betty – Great. Most of their demands are that "more free time must be given on weekends" and "a longer break has to be approved". They want it very bad, among other demands.



Nanda – A meeting will be held by tomorrow morning to ensure that all we can do will be done.

Betty – Ok, the message is being transmitted to them.

Uses of the Passive Voice

The passive voice is used when the focus is on the action. It is not important or not known, however, who or what is performing the action.

There are a few rules to be followed when forming this voice of the verb.

Tense / Voice		Subject	Verb	Object
Simple Present	Active:	A letter	is written	by Rita.
	Passive:	Rita	wrote	a letter.
Simple Past	Active:	A letter	was written	by Rita.
	Passive:	Rita	has written	a letter.
Present Perfect	Active:	A letter	has been written	by Rita.
	Passive:	Rita	will write	a letter.
Future	Active:	A letter	will be written	by Rita.
	Passive:	Rita	can write	a letter.
Modal Verb	Active:	A letter	can be written	by Rita.
	Passive:	Rita	is writing	a letter.
Present Continuous	Active:	A letter	is being written	by Rita.
	Passive:	Rita	was writing	a letter.
Past Continuous	Active:	A letter	was being written	by Rita.
	Passive:	Rita	had written	a letter.
Past Perfect	Active:	A letter	had been written	by Rita.
	Passive:	Rita	will have written	a letter.
Future Perfect	Active:	A letter	will have been written	by Rita.
	Passive:	Rita	would write	a letter.
Conditional I	Active:	A letter	would be written	by Rita.
	Passive:	Rita	would have written	a letter.
Conditional II	Active:	A letter	would have been written	by Rita.
	Passive:			

PRACTICE

A- Change the sentences below in the active voice into the passive voice:

- 1- Bob closes the gate. The gate _____ by Bob.
- 2- Bob is closing the gate. The gate _____ by Bob.
- 3- Bob has closed the gate. The gate _____ by Bob.
- 4- Bob closed the gate. The gate _____ by Bob.
- 5- Bob was closing the gate. The gate _____ by Bob.
- 6- Bob had closed the gate. The gate _____ by Bob.
- 7- Bob will close the gate. The gate _____ by Bob.
- 8- Bob is going to close the gate. The gate _____ by Bob.
- 9- Bob will have closed the gate. The gate _____ by Bob.

B- Rewrite the sentences using the passive voice:

- 1- People produce cars in the factory.

- 2- The farmer grows carrot on his field.

- 3- Everyone in this class loves and respects the teacher.

- 4- A mechanic repairs a car in the garage.

- 5- People cut down more and more trees nowadays.

- 6- The students read story books every day.

PRACTICE

C- Rewrite the sentences into the active voice:

1- The telephone was invented by Alexander Graham Bell.

2- This book was written by a very famous writer.

3- The director was hired by the president of the company.

4- The cake was made by his brother.

5- The movie is being played by them at the Center Mall Movies.

6- The exotic car has been bought by a rich man.

7- The house will be cleaned by the maid.

8- Can the match be won by these players?

9- That house was built ten years ago by my father.

D- Now, it's your turn to write sentences in the active and passive voice:

Active:

Passive:

Active:

Passive:

Active:

Passive:

Active:

Passive:

LESSON 38

SHOULD HAVE / MUST HAVE / WOULD HAVE

Modal verbs

I should have done
You must have done
He should have done
She would have done
It would have done
We must have done
They must have done

Verbos modais

Eu deveria ter feito
Você deve ter feito
Ele deveria ter feito
Ela teria feito
Isso teria feito
Devemos ter feito
Eles(as) devem ter feito

Praticando

I should have traveled with her.
You must have done that.
She would have interviewed the actress.
It must have been love but it's over now.
They should have studied English before.
We would have bought that car.
He would have sung at the party.
She would have drunk all the juice.
We should have thought about that.
They must have applied for the job.
She must have had an awful experience.

Praticando

Eu deveria ter viajado com ela.
Você deve ter feito isso.
Ela teria entrevistado a atriz.
Deve ter sido amor, mas agora acabou.
Eles deveriam ter estudado inglês antes.
Teríamos comprado aquele carro.
Ele teria cantado na festa.
Ela teria bebido todo o suco.
Deveríamos ter pensado nisso.
Eles devem ter se candidatado para o trabalho.
Ela deve ter tido uma experiência terrível.

Negative

I shouldn't have gone to the party alone.
You wouldn't have had the same lucky I had.
She mustn't have studied for the test.
They shouldn't have driven so fast like that.
We wouldn't have done it better.
They mustn't have drunk at the party. They are sober.
He wouldn't have helped us. He isn't a nice person.

Negativo

Eu não deveria ter ido à festa sozinho.
Você não teria tido a mesma sorte que eu.
Ela não deve ter estudado para o teste.
Eles não deveriam ter dirigido tão rápido assim.
Não teríamos feito melhor.
Eles não devem ter bebido na festa. Eles estão sóbrios.
Ele não teria nos ajudado. Ele não é uma pessoa legal.

Interrogative

Would you have stopped if you had the chance?
Should they have planned the trip better?
Must he have thrown the documents away?
Would she have married me?
Should I have asked her to marry me?
Would the boss have paid us a treat?
Must they have broken the glasses?
Should it have turned itself on before the alarm?
Would you have bought me some flowers?
Should their parents have been more strict with them?

Interrogativo

Você teria parado se tivesse a chance?
Eles deveriam ter planejado melhor a viagem?
Ele deve ter jogado os documentos fora?
Ela teria se casado comigo?
Eu deveria ter pedido a ela para se casar comigo?
O patrão nos teria pago uma recompensa?
Eles devem ter quebrado os vidros?
Isso deveria ter ligado antes do alarme?
Você teria me comprado algumas flores?
Os pais deles deveriam ter sido mais rígidos com eles?

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

Carlos – Adam, what would you have done to accomplish more in life?

Adam – First of all, I would have studied more. Studying is really important to get better opportunities. I would also have taken a tech course.

Carlos – Yeah, I agree with you. I didn't do much in the past. I should have listened to my mom.

Adam – So should I. But, the thing is, it's never late to get qualified. I know we can do better. Our friends must have worked hard in life because most of them are settled in some big companies.

Carlos – You're right about that, Adam. Let's start looking up courses to get us qualified.

Adam – Carlos, I have some money in my savings account and I know you also have some. Let's spend this money the best way possible.

Carlos – I know one thing we can do right away. Let's learn English at Aliança América.

Adam – There you go! I've heard it's the best language school ever!

Conversation 2

Rose – Hi Beth, what happened to the cargo? It should have been here already.

Beth – There were some complications on the loading process but it should be here by the end of the week. That's the forecast given.

Rose – What a shame! I would have picked it up myself if I knew it would be that late.

Beth – I understand that, Rose, but there is nothing we can do besides waiting. I should have ordered the goods in another company.

Rose – Start looking for some other suppliers. We can't just rely on one supplier only. There should be at least 3 of them.

Beth – I'll ensure our team provides some other names to have all necessities covered. One thing that must have interfered is the bad weather. It's something we should take in consideration.

Rose – Right, but don't forget we have had some delays lately.

These past modal verbs are all used to talk about things that didn't really happen in the past; hypothetical situations.

1- Could have + past participle means that something was possible in the past, or you had the ability to do something in the past, but that you didn't do it.

- *I could have gone away, but I didn't have money.*

2- Should have + past participle can mean something that would have been a good idea, but that you didn't do it. It can portray the feeling of regret.

3- Would have + past participle

We can use **would have + past participle** to talk about something you wanted to do but didn't. This is very similar to the third conditional, but we don't need an 'if clause'.

- *I would have bought that car, it was very beautiful.*

Answer the question below:

What would you have done differently in the past to have a different life now?

PRACTICE

A- Translate the sentences below:

1- Eu deveria ter falado com o gerente antes de vir aqui.

2- Você poderia ter ido viajar com seus pais?

3- Ela teria feito aquilo melhor do que o estagiário.

4- O que você poderia ter feito para impedir o acidente?

5- Ele teria vendido a empresa para os estrangeiros.

6- Eles deveriam ter pedido permissão para entrar no prédio.

7- Isso poderia ter sido feito a muito tempo atrás.

8- Os acionistas deveriam ter prestado mais atenção no mercado.

9- Você não deveria ter gritado com ela.

10- Ele não poderia ter feito isso.

11- Ela teria viajado para Berlim com o time para jogar o jogo?

12- O que você poderia ter feito?

13- Minha família deveria ter me ouvido quando disse que venderia o carro.

14- O que eu poderia ter feito para ajudar o vizinho?

15- Vocês deveriam ter ido de ônibus ao invés de avião.

LESSON 39

IF CLAUSE–THIRDCONDITIONAL

The third conditional is formed by an 'if clause' and a 'main clause'. The if clause is built using verbs in the past perfect, while the main clause is formed by a modal verb + have + participle. We mostly use: **wouldhave/could have / might have**.

A terceira condicional é formada pela "if clause" e a "main clause". A if clause é construída utilizando-se verbos no past perfect, enquanto a main clause é formada por verbo modal + have + participle. Usa-se principalmente: would have / could have / might have.

(if + past perfect) + (would have / could have / might have + past participle)

If clause = oração condicional

Main clause = oração principal

Practicing

If I had seen you there, I would have talked to you.
If he had studied harder, he would have passed the exam.
If my alarm had gone off earlier, I would have gone with them.

Negative

I wouldn't have told you If I had known the truth.
If she hadn't come, I could have called her parents.
It might not have happened if you had taken care of it.
If they hadn't gone abroad, they wouldn't have gotten that job.

Interrogative

Would you have come to the party if you had known about it?
What might you have done if you'd arrived sooner?
Where could you have gone if you hadn't come here?
If you had won the free trip, where would you have gone?
If it had rained, would you have had the picnic?
If you had taken less money, would you have bought the same shoes?

Praticando

Se eu tivesse te visto lá, teria falado com você.
Se ele tivesse estudado mais, ele teria passado no exame.
Se meu alarme tivesse disparado mais cedo, eu teria ido com eles.

Negativo

Eu não teria te contado se eu soubesse a verdade.
Se ela não tivesse vindo, eu poderia ter ligado para os pais dela.
Poderia não ter acontecido se você tivesse cuidado disso.
Se eles não tivessem ido para o exterior, eles não teriam conseguido esse emprego.

Interrogativo

Você teria vindo para a festa se soubesse sobre isso?
O que você poderia ter feito se tivesse chegado antes?
Onde você poderia ter ido se não tivesse vindo aqui?
Se você tivesse ganhado a viagem grátis, para onde você teria ido?
Se tivesse chovido, você teria feito o piquenique?
Se você tivesse pego menos dinheiro, você teria comprado os mesmos sapatos?

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

Carlos – Adam, how did you meet Susan? You haven't told me yet.

Adam – Well, I was at school one day and I received a phone call from my brother saying dad was in the emergency room. So I ran out of class towards the parking lot and I noticed I had forgotten my wallet. Then I went back to get it and I saw this beautiful girl staring at me. To make a long story short, if I hadn't forgotten my wallet in the classroom, I wouldn't have met Susan. Or, if I might say, I wouldn't have met her if dad hadn't been taken to the E.R.

Carlos – Wow, this is a story to be told for the rest of your life.

Adam – Yeah, I would say so. How about you? When are you going to meet someone?

Carlos – Well, if I hadn't lost the opportunity to meet my other half back on our graduation party, I could have gotten married already. But, to be honest with you, I'm not in a rush.

Adam – Carlos, I'll introduce you to my sister-in-law. She's a nice girl. You'll like her.



Conversation 2

Geane – Hi, Sandra. What went wrong at the meeting? It seemed like nothing was working.

Sandra – My sincere apologies, Miss Geane. There were some technical issues I couldn't figure out how to fix. I promise it won't happen again.

Geane – Well, if you had listened to me earlier it wouldn't have happened. The computer didn't turn on, the outlets were wet and the cables weren't long enough.

Sandra – Anyway, there's still another opportunity to present the deal. We wouldn't have had that chance if I hadn't met the president of the company a few years ago. I'll call him to ensure he can settle another meeting so we can have the presentation.

Geane – Ok, and I will ensure this time there won't be any surprises.



Read this paragraph about the sinking of the RMS Titanic and answer the question:

On the night of Sunday, 14 April 1912, the temperature was near freezing and the ocean was completely calm. Surviving 2nd Officer Charles Lightoller later wrote, "the sea was like glass". The ship's course had been changed by the captain, but other than this, he saw no reason to slow down. The owner of the ship, Bruce Ismay, was also on board and had instructed the captain to speed up in order to break the record for a transatlantic voyage. The captain agreed, but perhaps if he had known of the messages the ship had received in the radio room, he would have acted differently. According to a ship ahead called the Mesaba, lots of large icebergs were in the area. These messages did not reach him.

adapted from www.wikipedia.org

Answer the question below according to your opinion using the third conditional:

If the ship RMS Titanic hadn't hit the iceberg, what would have happened to it?

PRACTICE

A- Translate the sentences below:

1- Eu teria viajado nas minhas férias se tivesse guardado dinheiro.

2- Se eles tivessem chegado mais cedo, eles não teriam perdido o trem.

3- Se você tivesse me ligado, eu teria vindo aqui te ajudar.

4- Se nós tivéssemos guardado dinheiro, nós teríamos comprado um carro novo.

5- Se o clima estivesse melhor esta semana, nós teríamos ido à praia.

6- Se nós tivéssemos visto Mary na festa, teríamos conversado com ela.

7- Você teria terminado a prova se tivesse tido mais tempo?

8- Você teria feito algo diferentemente na sua vida se tivesse tido a chance?

9- Eles não teriam perdido o voo se eles tivessem prestado atenção aos avisos.

10- Ela não teria ficado tão exausta se tivesse ido para a cama mais cedo.

11- Ele teria chegado a tempo para a reunião se tivesse saído de casa às oito.

12- Se minha mãe tivesse me visto na rua, ela teria me deixado de castigo.

13- Se você tivesse sabido a resposta, você teria levantado a sua mão.

14- Se eu tivesse falado contigo, você poderia ter feito algo para me ajudar.

15- Se eu tivesse ido a Hollywood, eu poderia ter conhecido uma estrela de cinema.

16- Ela teria tido um ataque se tivesse me visto.

17- Se eu estivesse com sede, eu teria bebido água.

18- O que ele teria feito se tivesse ganhado na loteria?

PRACTICE

B- Complete the sentences with the appropriate third conditional:

- 1- If I _____ more, I _____ the exam. (study, pass)
- 2- Mark _____ me if he _____ my cell number. (call, not lose)
- 3- We _____ a cab if the public transport workers _____ on strike. (not take, not be)
- 4- Mom _____ us to the beach if it _____. (take, not rain)
- 5- If I _____ you were coming, I _____ you at the airport. (know, meet)
- 6- I _____ them a gift if they _____ me to their wedding. (buy, invite)
- 7- If we _____ a map with us, we _____ the village in time. (take, reach)
- 8- If Bob _____ earlier, he _____ the train. (get, reach)
- 9- If I _____ shopping, what _____ ? (not go, you eat)
- 10- If you _____ the fine, you _____ to prison. (pay, be sent)
- 11- She _____ me if she _____ I was busy. (not visit, know)
- 12- We _____ to Spain if there _____ the right flight. (fly, be)
- 13- My dad _____ mom if she _____ a poor lady. (not marry, be)
- 14- If the wall _____ properly it _____ down. (be built, not break)
- 15- If I _____ more careful, I _____ so many mistakes. (be, not make)
- 16- I _____ there in time if the weather _____ better (arrive, be)
- 17- If I _____ more time, I _____ my homework. (have, do)
- 18- If Patty _____ well, my aunt _____ her to the zoo. (behave, take)
- 19- If I _____ to the stereo, I _____ the doorbell. (not listen, hear)
- 20- If he _____ with us to the cinema, he _____ himself. (come, enjoy)

C- Complete the sentences below:

- 1- If I had known you, _____
- 2- They would have gone away if _____
- 3- The company could have hired more workers if _____
- 4- If we had found it out before, _____
- 5- If I had won the lottery, _____

LESSON 40

QUARTER TEST VIII

A- Translate the sentences below according to the last 4 lessons studied:

1- Ela disse que o professor dela havia passado muito dever de casa para esse final de semana.

2- Você disse que a máquina estava funcionando perfeitamente, mas não está.

3- Eles disseram que o carro deles tinha sido roubado na noite anterior.

4- O gerente disse que Mark tem faltado no trabalho ultimamente.

5- O artigo no jornal foi escrito por um jornalista não profissional.

6- Os trabalhadores têm sido prejudicados diretamente pela pandemia.

7- Esses prédios têm sido construídos com o acompanhamento de um engenheiro?

8- O relatório estará feito e entregue até amanhã.

9- Eu teria te convidado pra a festa, mas fiquei preso no trabalho.

10- Me desculpe por ter vindo assim, eu deveria ter te avisado.

11- As crianças não saíram, mas elas poderiam ter ido com o vizinho.

12- Eu acho que os bandidos podem ter fugido a pé.

13- Ela poderia ter ido ao supermercado sozinha para fazer as compras?

14- Se você tivesse me avisado antes, eu não teria permitido que João saísse.

15- Eles poderiam ter evitado o acidente se estivessem dirigindo devagar.

LESSON 41

PAST PERFECT TENSE

The past perfect is a verb tense which is used to show that an action took place once or many times before another point in the past.

(O passado perfeito é um tempo verbal usado para mostrar que uma ação ocorreu uma ou várias vezes antes de outro ponto no passado.)

The past perfect is formed using **had + past participle**.

Practicing - Praticando

I had never seen such a beautiful beach before I went to Miami.

(Eu nunca tinha visto uma praia tão bonita antes de ir para Miami.)

I had some money because I had got some from my dad.

(Eu tinha algum dinheiro porque eu havia recebido um pouco do meu pai.)

Tony knew Istanbul that well because he had visited the city several times.

(Tony conhecia Istambul tão bem porque havia visitado a cidade várias vezes.)

She only understood the movie because she had read the book.

(Ela só entendeu o filme porque tinha lido o livro.)

Peterson had never been to a rock concert before last night.

(Peterson nunca tinha ido a um show de rock antes da noite passada.)

We were able to get a hotel room because we had booked in advance.

(Conseguimos um quarto de hotel porque tínhamos reservado com antecedência.)

I had been to the USA once before.

(Eu já tinha estado nos EUA uma vez antes.)

We had had that car for ten years before it broke down.

(Tínhamos tido aquele carro por dez anos antes de ele quebrar.)

By the time Alex finished his studies, he had been in London for over eight years.

(Quando Alex terminou os estudos, ele já havia estado em Londres há mais de oito anos.)

Negative

I hadn't done the dishes when my parents arrived.

They hadn't bought the tickets by the time the bus parked.

The company hadn't received the money before shipping.

She hadn't called him before he left.

It hadn't been turned on for a long time before that.

They hadn't driven what they were supposed to.

Interrogative

Had he sought out all the clues?

Had we already found the right person?

Had she received the flowers when he got home?

Had the children been busy before dinner?

Had lunch been made before the employees arrived?

Had the company already closed before the trial?

Had the teacher asked the question before?

Had you been to any country in Europe before?

Negativo

Eu não tinha lavado a louça quando meus pais chegaram.

Eles não haviam comprado as passagens no momento em que o ônibus estacionou.

A empresa não recebeu o dinheiro antes do envio.

Ela não tinha ligado para ele antes de ele sair.

Isso não havia sido ligado por um longo tempo antes disso.

Eles não tinham dirigido o que deveriam.

Interrogativo

Ele havia procurado por todas as pistas?

Já havíamos encontrado a pessoa certa?

Ela tinha recebido as flores quando ele chegou em casa?

As crianças estiveram ocupadas antes do jantar?

O almoço havia sido feito antes dos funcionários chegarem?

A empresa já havia fechado antes do julgamento?

O professor havia perguntado a questão anteriormente?

Você já esteve em algum país na Europa antes?

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

Josh – Mark, what were you doing at the café last night?

Mark – I was having a snack with my brother and we were talking about a friend of mine who I hadn't spoken to in a long time. I think he had changed his phone number and didn't give me the new one. Anyway, he texted me out of the blue because he had run into a common friend of ours and they were talking about me.

Josh – That's awesome, Mark. I also have a friend who I haven't heard from in a long time.

We haven't seen each other since high school.

Mark – Yes, sometimes it's hard to keep in touch with old friends. And since we moved, it's even harder to know where they are.

Josh – Good thing we can use technology to find old friends and classmates.

Mark – For sure it's something I need to get used to!



Conversation 2

Rose – Anne, have you ever thought of someone and then met this person somewhere?

Anne – Oh, yes, Rose. A few days ago, I went to the post office to send a gift to a niece we had gotten in touch recently and something happened. I was waiting in line and the phone rang, it was my husband saying our niece had just arrived. So, I was thinking about her and I was ready to send her a gift and she appeared out of the blue.

Rose – That's hilarious. I bet you ran out of the post office right away, right?

Anne – Wrong, I wanted to do that, but I had paid for a box as soon as I arrived there. So I had to find a way to get my money back.

Rose – Yeah, that's something I try not to do. I'd rather spend some time with the clerk packing whatever I have to and then pay the fees.

Anne – Next time I'll follow your advice.



PRACTICE

A- Complete the sentences with the **Simple Past** or the **Past Perfect**:

- 1- I _____ (worry) a lot about her before I _____ . (hear) that she was safe.
- 2- I didn't like the car. It _____ (be) much smaller than I _____ (think) at first.
- 3- He told us he _____ (travel) to many Asian countries.
- 4- They _____ . (eat) dessert after they _____ (have) dinner.
- 5- She _____ just _____ (arrive) before we _____ (call) her parents.
- 6- The Principal wanted to know why he _____ (bring) a toy to school.
- 7- After he _____ work) at the company for ten years he _____ (decide) to quit his job.
- 8- When I _____ (arrive) at the party John _____ already _____ (go) home.
- 9- We _____ (wait) until the match _____ . (finish).
- 10- They _____ (leave) the room before the meeting _____ (finish).
- 11- I _____ (buy) a new camera before I _____ (go) to Boston.
- 12- I _____ just _____ (turn off) the lights when the phone _____ (ring).
- 13- _____ he. _____ (know) her for a long time before they _____ (get) married?
- 14- He _____ (drive) down the hotel where they _____ (spend) their honeymoon years ago.
- 15- When we _____ (get) to the station the train _____ (already / leave).
- 16- He _____ (sit) at a table by the window where he _____ (have) a meal with Jane.
- 17- Why _____ he _____ (not / ask) his mom before she _____ (leave) to work?
- 18- He was wondering why he _____ (let) her leave the office so early. _____
- 19- He knew he _____ (earn) that money with great difficulty.
- 20- After they _____ (go) home, he _____ (sit down) and _____ (light up) a cigarette.
- 21- He _____ (have to) go to work by bus because his car _____ (break) down.
- 22- He _____ (complain) before he _____ (hear) my offer.

The class had already started (**First thing happened**)
by the time I arrived (**Second thing happened**)

Notice that in this sentence the perfect past tense happens before another event.
We use the past perfect to talk about a past event prior to another one.

PRACTICE

B- Complete the sentences below with the appropriate preposition or adverb:

1. I had been there 3 years _____ I left.
2. I had seen it all _____ the time my replacement arrived.
3. Had you _____ seen one of those?
4. I had never done that _____.
5. We had been robbed seven times _____ three weeks.
6. I had been there _____ 1987.
7. I had never heard of it _____ my brother mentioned it in a letter.
8. _____ the time you landed, I had been waiting for several hours.
9. _____ the previous flight, I had fallen asleep.
10. She was tired. She had been writing the morning.
11. She dried the dishes. She had washed them _____ the morning.
12. I was sure I had seen him the day _____.
13. My father had spoken to him the _____ week.
14. He had been stealing from his employers _____ years.
15. She had arrived in Paris _____ the morning.
16. We had the same idea _____ the same time.
17. We told each other what we had been doing _____ the past seven years.
18. _____ he had tried on six pairs of shoes he decided he liked the first ones best.

CURIOSITY

"James while John had had had had had had had had had had a better effect on the teacher" é uma frase na língua inglesa usada como exemplo para frisar a importância da pontuação e para demonstrar ambiguidades lexicais. Apesar de gramaticalmente correta, a ausência de pontos, vírgulas, ponto-e-vírgulas e aspas torna o significado desta construção ambíguo.

A frase situa três personagens: dois alunos e um professor. James e John tiveram uma prova de inglês que pediu para descrever um homem que sofreu um resfriado no passado. John escreve: "The man had a cold", que o professor marca como incorreto, enquanto James escreve corretamente: "The man had had a cold". John usa o termo "had" na oração, enquanto James vale-se de "had had", que seria um termo mais apropriado para a frase em questão. O feito de James gera um maior apreço por parte do professor.

Se escrita com a pontuação correta e conforme seu sentido original, a frase fica:

James, while John had had "had", had had "had had"; "had had" had had a better effect on the teacher. E traduzida para o português, fica:

"James, enquanto John tinha usado 'had', usara 'had had'; 'had had' havia causado uma melhor impressão no professor."

LESSON 42

PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS

A WISH COME TRUE

One night, about a year ago, I went out with some friends. I didn't really want to go out because I had been sick for a couple of weeks and I was still weak. Anyway, I met this great girl, and we started talking. We had a great time and talked all night. So we decided to meet the next day, and, to make a long story short, we started doing some business. We had worked for about four months when she decided to make me a partnership offer. I was looking for something that I could make better money from and that was the opportunity. As I hadn't found any other opportunities, I decided to give it a try and that was the best thing that ever had happened to me.

Few months later our business achieved more than we had expected and other companies started to keep an eye on us. They visited our facilities and said they had followed our progress and wanted to be part of it. So, that was once the start of a dream which we all had had for a while.

Have you ever had a wish come true? Share it with your teacher then write about it!

Past perfect continuous

We use the past perfect continuous to talk about actions or events which started before a particular time in the past and were still in progress up to that time in the past.

When mom and dad arrived from work, we had been studying since the afternoon.

(Quando mamãe e papai chegaram do trabalho, vínhamos estudando desde a tarde.)

Praticando

They had been working for 9 hours when their boss finally arrived with the food.

I had been saving my money to buy this house and now I can do it.

You had been waiting there for more than two hours when he finally arrived.

She had been traveling a lot last month.

She had the chance to meet new people and places.

Praticando

Eles vinham trabalhando por nove horas quando seus chefe finalmente chegou com a comida.

Eu vinha guardando dinheiro para comprar essa casa e agora posso comprar.

Você vinha esperando por lá por mais de duas horas quando ele chegou finalmente.

Ela vinha viajando bastante mês passado.

Ela teve a chance de conhecer novas pessoas e lugares

Negative

They hadn't been working for 9 hours when their boss finally arrived with the food.

I hadn't been saving my money to buy this house and now I can't do it.

You hadn't been waiting there for more than two hours when he finally arrived.

She hadn't been traveling a lot last month. She didn't have the chance to meet new people and places.

Negativo

Eles não vinham trabalhando por nove horas quando seus chefe finalmente chegou com a comida.

Eu não vinha guardando dinheiro para comprar essa casa e agora não posso.

Você não vinha esperando lá por mais de duas horas quando ele chegou finalmente.

Ela não esteve viajando bastante mês passado.

Ela não teve a chance de conhecer novas pessoas e lugares.

Interrogative

Had they been cleaning the room?
Had he been seeking out all the clues?
Had we been dealing with the right person?
Had she been receiving the flowers?
Had the children been playing before dinner?
Had the baby been crying a lot before?
Had the company been selling the products?
Had the teacher been asking for the homework?
Had you been going to any country in Europe?

Interrogativo

Eles(as) vinham limpando o quarto?
Ele vinha procurando por todas as pistas?
Vínhamos lidando com a pessoa certa?
Ela vinha recebendo as flores?
As crianças vinham brincando antes do jantar?
O bebê vinha chorando muito antes?
A empresa vinha vendendo os produtos?
A professora vinha pedindo o dever de casa?
Você vinha indo a algum país da Europa?

READING COMPREHENSION

Have you ever had one of those days when everything seemed to go wrong? I'm sure you have, I know I have. I remember one particular day, I'd been invited to a very important meeting about some new products they had been talking for a month at the time. So I was quite excited about going to this meeting, and I maybe spent too long getting ready. I was a bit nervous when I was leaving the house, but confident, though. I then looked in my briefcase and I noticed most of the paperwork I had done wasn't there! So I had to go back inside, look for the papers and come out again. In this moment I was getting a little bit late for the meeting, but not that late. I got in my car, started driving, about halfway to the company my car stopped. I couldn't understand what was the matter until I looked at the fuel gauge: the car had run out of gas! 'Why?', you may ask. Well, because I'd lent my car to my son the day before and he used the gas and didn't fill up the tank. So I thought I'd call a cab. I looked in my briefcase again to find my mobile phone, but I couldn't find it. I was desperate. To my surprise, I'd left it on the table in the dining room. Therefore, even though it was pouring with rain, I had to get out of my car, on my meeting clothes, walk to the gas station and come back with gas. By that time I had been nearly 2 hours late. I was so flustered about being late that I started to drive, took a wrong turn and ended up on this one-way road, totally lost, driving round and round for at least 45 minutes until I managed to locate myself. After that, I finally arrived at the meeting over 2 hours late, and when I got there the manager I wanted to meet had just left, all the employees were gone, and my boss was terribly mad. I was so disappointed that I just turned around and went back home. Have you ever had a terrible day like that, when everything went wrong? If you have, write about it below.



PRACTICE

A- Complete the story about a strange coincidence. Use either the simple past or the past perfect. Sometimes both are possible:

A few weeks ago, my friend Jean moved into a new house across town. I was really happy

when she _____ (ask) me to come over last week because I _____

(not have) the chance to see the place yet. It took me a while to get there because I _____ (not go) to her new neighborhood very often and I _____ (get) a little lost.

But luckily, Jean _____ (send) me careful directions.

Anyway, when I finally _____ (arrive) at the house, it _____ (look) so familiar.

I was sure I _____ (be) there before. Then I realized that I had! I _____ (date)

someone who _____ (live) there. I _____ (be) in the house several times before. It was weird.

I _____ (not think) of that guy in twenty years! When I _____ (tell) Jean about it,

she _____ (not believe) me at first. What a coincidence!



B- Complete the sentences with the past simple or past perfect using the words in parentheses in the correct form:

1. My aunt flew to Paris last year. She _____ (never / go) on a plane before that.

2. We didn't need to wait because my wife _____ (already / buy) the tickets.

3. The thieves had already spent the money when the police _____ (catch) them.

4. Helen _____ (split up) with John before she met Paul.

5. We _____ (know) her address because she _____ (tell) us.

6. The children _____ (not eat) for days so they _____ (be) extremely hungry.

7. Everyone _____ (hug) each other after they _____ (finish) their exams.

8.- She didn't want to go to the cinema because she _____ (already / see) the film.

9.- I _____ (just / buy) a dress when a thief _____ (steal) my bag.

10. My niece _____ (go) to London three times by the time she _____ (be) sixteen.

11. My students _____ (raise) some money after they _____ (see) a documentary on TV about

Africa.

12. It was half past three and we still _____ (not / eat) lunch.

13. Our teacher _____ (give) us extra homework because we _____ (not finish) our essays.

14. My father _____ (lose) his glasses and he couldn't read the newspaper.

15. The car stopped because we _____ (run) out of gas.

16. He _____ (feel) very ill because he _____ (not sleep) well.

PRACTICE

C- Translate the sentences below:

1- Mary me deu o endereço de Tony antes de partir.

2- Quando os meninos chegaram ao cinema, o filme já havia começado.

3- Antes de chegarmos à estação, vimos que tínhamos nos perdido.

4- Todos os ingressos haviam sido vendidos antes do início do show.

5- Eles tomaram banho depois de terminarem o jogo.

6- Eu perguntei ao Sr. Green quantos livros ele havia lido.

7- Mamãe me perguntou por que eu não arrumei meu quarto.

8- Bob se arrependeu de ter me contado a história.

9- Alan assistiu à TV depois de almoçar.

10- O sol brilhou ontem depois de o clima ter estado frio por várias semanas.

11- O tio David foi ao médico depois de ter estado doente por um mês.

12- Antes de a polícia pegar o ladrão, ele havia roubado mais dois relógios.

13- Uma vez, mamãe pintou um quadro, embora nunca o tivesse aprendido.

14- Não contei ao meu professor que minha mãe havia me ajudado com o dever de casa.

15- Fiquei muito zangado quando vi que meu irmão havia comido minha maçã.

16- A bicicleta era muito mais cara do que ele havia pensado a princípio.

17- Papai me levou para casa depois que eu caí na água.

18- Marion me perguntou o que havia acontecido comigo na semana passada.

LESSON 43

PHRASAL VERBS—PART I

Phrasal verbs

Get along
Give away
Step down
Make up
Ring back
Find out
Cut off
Carry out
Take over
Fall over

Verbos frasais

Se dar bem / Conviver
Doar
Se afastar
Criar / Inventar / Reconciliar-se
Ligar de volta
Descobrir
Parar / Interromper
Realizar / Executar
Assumir / Tomar conta
Cair / Colapsar

Phrasal verbs

Give up
Hold up
Go off
Makeout
Sort out
Look out
Look at
Look after
Get out
Get in
Get into

Verbo frasais

Desistir
Esperar / Segurar
Explodir / Disparar / Apodrecer
Perceber / Enxergar / Beijar
Organizar / Planejar
Ter cuidado / Estar alerta
Observar / Olhar
Cuidar / Tomar conta
Sair / Se retirar
Entrar / Chegar
Chegar / Matricular-se

Praticando

I can't ring you back in half an hour.
The cop decided to step down after 10 years.
We heard the bomb went off at the gas station.
Large companies sometimes take over smaller ones.
My brother and I get along very well most of the times.
I gave up playing football a long time ago.
Relax, we'll try to sort out the problems.
That story sounds weird. You have surely made it up.
We finally found out where they live.
I gave all my books away to the library.
I can make out the signs this far away.

The pavement is very slippery, you might fall over.
We know who carried out the robberies.
The traffic on the road was held up by construction work.
The energy company cut off our electricity.
Look out when you go out at night.

Negative

I couldn't get in at college due to the high prices.
He didn't get out of the room in time.
They didn't look at the map, so they got lost.
The babysitter didn't look after the baby as we wanted.

She didn't get along with her cousins.
I hope the bomb doesn't go off. It would be a disaster.
I couldn't ring you back because I was busy.
We didn't give up learning English. That's why we're here.

Interrogative

Do you get along with your neighbors?
Will you give away your old clothes?
Should the president step down before the election?
Did they make up the story?
Are the hospitals carrying out the tests we required?
Why did they give up before the game?
Can we get out of the house before it's too late?
Could you help us sort out the issues about the deal?
Did he get in without my permission?

Praticando

Posso te ligar de volta em meia hora.
O policial decidiu renunciar após 10 anos.
Ouvimos que a bomba explodiu no posto de gasolina.
Grandes empresas às vezes adquirem as menores.
Meu irmão e eu nos damos muito bem na maioria das vezes.
Desisti de jogar futebol há muito tempo.
Relaxe, vamos tentar resolver os problemas.
Essa história está estranha. Você certamente a inventou.
Finalmente descobrimos onde eles moram.
Eu doeje todos os meus livros para a biblioteca.
Eu posso ver as placas de longe.
O pavimento está bem escorregadio, você pode cair.
Sabemos quem executou os roubos.
O tráfego na estrada foi interrompido pela obra.

A companhia de energia cortou nossa eletricidade.
Tome cuidado quando você sai à noite.

Negativo

Não consegui me matricular na faculdade devido aos preços altos.
Ele não saiu da sala a tempo.
Eles não olharam para o mapa, então se perderam.
A babá não cuidou do bebê como queríamos.
Ela não se dava bem com seus primos.
Espero que a bomba não exploda. Seria um desastre.
Não pude ligar de volta porque estava ocupado.
Não desistimos de aprender inglês. É por isso que estamos aqui.

Interrogativo

Você se dá bem com seus vizinhos?
Você vai doar suas roupas velhas?
O presidente deveria renunciar antes da eleição?
Eles inventaram a história?
Os hospitais estão realizando os exames que solicitamos?
Por que eles desistiram antes do jogo?
Podemos sair de casa antes que seja tarde demais?
Você poderia nos ajudar a resolver os problemas da negociação?
Ele entrou sem minha permissão?

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

Matt – Dave, do you get along with your siblings?

Dave – Yes, I do. Actually, we don't argue at all. How about you and yours?

Matt – Not really... you know I'm the oldest, so I try to keep them aware of a few things but they don't get the idea, it's hard sometimes.

Dave – Well, being the oldest, you must look after your siblings and find out what their needs are.

Matt – Yeah, I know. I try to sort it out and do my best.

Dave – Look at some books that help people deal with families and try to learn something from them.

Matt – You're right, thanks for the tip. I won't give up on my siblings. It's part of my responsibilities.

Dave – That's it. You've got to take over the situation!



Conversation 2

Julie – Hi Mona, did you see what happened yesterday at the gas station around the corner?

Mona – No, I didn't. What happened?

Julie – There was a bomb in one of the pumps and it went off during rush hour.

Mona – Oh goodness! Did anyone get hurt? I mean, or worse?

Julie – Yes, pretty bad. But fortunately there aren't any casualties. The police are trying to find out who set the bomb. They are looking at the cameras to find out who did it.

Mona – What about the manager and the workers, what did they say?

Julie – The manager made up a very odd story. He's definitely a suspect.

Mona – Maybe he doesn't get along with the owner or the workers and wanted to do such a thing.

Julie – The owner took over the whole operation while the investigation goes through.

Mona – I hope the police don't give up until they find the person responsible for it and lock them down.



What is a phrasal verb? Let's understand it better.

In English traditional grammar, a phrasal verb is the combination of two or three words from different grammatical categories

– a verb and a particle, such as an adverb or a preposition – to form a single semantic unit on a lexical or syntactic level. Examples: turn down, run into, sit up. They are in everyday, constant use. These semantic units cannot be understood based upon the meanings of the individual parts alone, but must be taken as a whole. In other words, the meaning is non- compositional and thus unpredictable.

Here are some examples of inseparable phrasal verbs:

Back out - I hope he doesn't **back out** of the deal. - Espero que ele não desista do negócio.

Break down - The poor woman broke down in tears. - A pobre mulher rompeu em lágrimas.

Break up - The couple decided to break up after their argument. - O casal decidiu se separar depois da briga.

Catch on - The teacher repeats grammar exercises until the students catch on. - O professor repete exercícios de gramática até que os alunos entendam. - O professor repete exercícios gramaticais até que os alunos peguem a matéria.

Come back - He came back to Brazil after two years abroad. - Ele retornou ao Brasil depois de dois anos no exterior.

Die out - Many languages have died out in the history of mankind. - Muitas línguas já desapareceram na história da humanidade.

Eat out - We don't have any food at home. Why don't we eat out? - Não temos nada de comida em casa. Por que não comemos fora?

Fall off - The door handle fell off. - A maçaneta da porta caiu.

PRACTICE

A- Translate the sentences below using the phrasal verbs learned:

1- Nós poderíamos conviver melhor com nossos vizinhos.

2- Temos muitas coisas para doar depois que finalizamos a mudança.

4- O gerente se afastou depois que descobriram sobre um escândalo.

5- As crianças criaram uma desculpa engraçada para não serem castigadas.

6- Você poderia me ligar de volta depois das 15h? Estou em reunião agora.

7- Eu descobri que quem fala inglês fluentemente ganha até 70% a mais no salário.

8- O serviço de energia foi interrompido depois que houve o terremoto.

9- Todos os serviços solicitados foram executados pela empresa do Fred.

10- Infelizmente o banco assumiu a empresa depois que ela faliu.

11- Eles caíram do cavalo porque ele era selvagem. Não deveriam ter montado nele.

12- Eles desistiram tão facilmente? Deveriam tentar outra vez.

13- Os empresários esperam até o último minuto para investir na bolsa de valores.

14- Meu alarme não disparou esta manhã, por isso cheguei atrasado.

15- Como que eles conseguiram perceber todos esses obstáculos nessa chuva?

16- Você precisa organizar melhor esses documentos.

PRACTICE

B- Put the words in order to make sentences:

one hour / back / will / I / ring / you / in / .

being / after / down / caught / step / he / Did / ?

off / My alarm / every / goes / morning / clock / .

always / along / I / My siblings / and / get / .

You / your / up / should / give / never / dreams / on / .

been / out / All / problems / have / your / of / sorted / .

to / need / who / out / lives / I / find / here / .

skating / He / over / fell / he / when / was / .

who / robberies / the / carried / know / out / We / .

out / The lab / experiments / many / carries / month / every / .

off / The energy company / our / electricity / cut / .

on / out / streets / you / when / Look / walk / the / .

C- Make up sentences with the phrasal verbs given below:

Back out

Break down

Break up

Catch on

Come back

Die out

Eat out

Fall off

LESSON 44

PHRASALVERBS–PART II

Phrasal verbs

Be up to

Break up (with)
Carry on (with)
Catch up (with)
Come up to
Come up (with)
Crack down on
Do away with
Drop out of
Get away with

Verbos frasais

Estar à altura / ser até
Se separar
Continuar
Alcançar
Chegar em alguém
Inventar
Repreender
Acabar com algo
Abandonar
Se safar

Phrasal verbs

Get backat
Get back(from)
Keep out of
Keep up (with)
Kick out (of)
Look forward to
Put up with
Run away (with)
Run out of
Take out on

Verbo frasais

Se vingar
Retornar
Manter-se fora
Continuar com / Acompanhar
Ser jogado para fora
Estar na expectativa
Aguentar / suportar
Tomar conta
Ficar sem
Descontar em alguém

Praticando

He'll probably win, he's up to the challenge.
I broke up with my girlfriend.
The doctor told her to carry on with the treatment.

Praticando

Ele provavelmente vai vencer, está à altura do desafio.
Eu terminei com minha namorada.
O médico disse a ela que continuasse com o tratamento.

Negative

He didn't break up with me, I did.
They didn't carry on with their tasks.
I couldn't do my homework to catch up with the other students.
He didn't come up to his mom to tell her the truth.

We didn't come up with the solution that they asked for.
The government didn't do away with the taxes we expected.
Teenagers shouldn't drop out of school.
The kids didn't get away with their mess.
I can't put up with this situation, it's too much for me.
Parents shouldn't take their stress out on their kids.
We won't run out of sugar if you take it easy on dessert.

Negative

Ele não terminou comigo, eu o fiz.
Eles não continuaram com suas tarefas.
Não consegui fazer meu dever de casa para alcançar os outros alunos.
Ele não veio até sua mãe para lhe contar a verdade.
Não encontramos a solução que eles haviam pedido.
O governo não acabou com os impostos que esperávamos.
Os adolescentes não devem abandonar a escola.
As crianças não se safaram com a bagunça delas.
Eu não aguento essa situação, é demais para mim.
Os pais não deveriam descontar o estresse deles em seus filhos.
Não vamos ficar sem açúcar se você manejar na sobremesa.

Interrogative

What are you up to this weekend?
Did he break up with her? I don't believe it!
Should I carry on with the conversation about music?
Did they catch up with the chores they had?
Do you come up to your boss when you need?
Could they come up with some solution?
Will the city hall crack down on corruption?
Will he drop out of the English course? What a shame!

Interrogativo

O que você está afim de fazer neste final de semana?
Ele terminou com ela? Eu não acredito!
Devo continuar com a conversa sobre música?
Eles alcançaram as tarefas que tinham?
Você vai até seu chefe quando precisa?
Eles poderiam encontrar alguma solução?
A prefeitura reprimirá a corrupção?
Ele vai desistir do curso de inglês? Que pena!

PRACTICE THE CONVERSATIONS

Conversation 1

Alan – Hey, Tony, what are you up to on Friday night?

Tony – Oh man, I have some homework to do. I need to catch up with some activities for which I'm late.

Alan – Dude, can you just carry on with this homework on Saturday morning so we can go out on Friday? There is a new band playing at the club and I don't want to miss it.

Tony – Wow, a new band? That's awesome. But, on the flip side, I won't be able to do anything besides working on Saturday morning. So, I have to get the activities done!

Alan – Come on dude, you can get away with it.

Tony – Sorry but responsibilities first, then fun.

Alan – I don't blame you. Unfortunately I dropped out of school last year.

Tony – But it's never late to keep up with your studies.



Conversation 2

Julie – Mrs. Mona, we need to crack down on some employees who have been missing work lately.

Mona – Ok. First of all, I will do away with some benefits they might have. Then I'll deal with this issue myself.

Julie – I appreciate it because I can't put up with it anymore..

Mona – Unless they come up to me with a good reason for the absences, I'll have to take some serious actions against it.

Julie – Well, one of them sent a message saying he had to take care of some paperwork specially about his children.

Mona – Well, in this case we can have an exception.

Julie – Another thing you need to be aware of is the fact that some workers are also trying to get away with the problem regarding the missing products.

Mona – This is a very delicate subject to be discussed between only us. Call our lawyer tomorrow and try to set a meeting so we can keep up with this issue.

Julie – Ok, I'll do it right now.



One fact about separable phrasal verbs is that when you're using an object pronoun, it always has to be placed between the verb and the preposition/adverb.

e.g: Turn down the radio. (Abaixe o volume do rádio).

Turn the radio down. (Abaixe o volume do rádio).

Turn it down. (Abaixe o volume do rádio).

NEVER write or say 'Turn down it'.

PRACTICE

A- Write a sentence with each phrasal verb given and then change it into negative and interrogative form:

Be up to _____

Neg: _____

Inter: _____

Break up with _____

Neg : _____

Inter: _____

Carry on with _____

Neg: _____

Inter: _____

Catch up with _____

Neg: _____

Inter: _____

Come up to _____

Neg: _____

Inter: _____

Come up with _____

Neg: _____

Inter: _____

Crack down on _____

Neg: _____

Inter: _____

Do away _____

Neg: _____

Inter: _____

Drop out of _____

Neg: _____

Inter: _____

Get away with _____

Neg: _____

Inter: _____

Get back at _____

Neg: _____

Inter: _____

Get back from _____

Neg: _____

Inter: _____

PRACTICE

B- Choose the right phrasal verb from the box to complete each sentence below. Keep a similar meaning from the words in parentheses:

switch on	get away with	put away	chill out	hand in	take down
sum up	let in	get up	look for	click on	live up to
sit down	give up	take off	fall over	close down	go away
get over	get down				

- 1- We want to _____ for the weekend. We'll probably go to the beach. (travel)
- 2- I have finished all my tests. After all that stress I need to _____. (relax)
- 3- We can _____ the situation in one word: chaos. (summarize).
- 4- I slipped on the ground and _____. I sprained my ankle and I had to go to the hospital. (collapse)
- 5- He has broken the law, so we must make sure he doesn't _____ it. (escape)
- 6- the printer icon _____ when you want to print. (select)
- 7- I _____ smoking two years ago. I feel much healthier now. (quit)
- 8- My sister broke up with her boyfriend a year ago and she _____ it really quickly. She is quite happy now and is even looking for someone else. (overcome)
- 9- I usually don't _____ before 10 a.m. on weekends. (rise)
- 10- Your room is a mess. _____ all your toys and clothes immediately. (store)
- 11- They _____ are a lot of shops because of the crisis on the economy. (shut)
- 12- The English teacher said that we had to _____ the essay in the following day. (give)
- 13- Please, _____ and relax. I'll bring you a cup of tea. (rest)
- 14- the lights _____. It is getting really dark. I can't see the blackboard. (activate)
- 15- What are you doing? I'm _____ my contact lenses. I was sure I had them in my bag and now I can't find them. (search)
- 16- America's weather always _____ me . It's always cloudy and raining. (depress)
- 17- _____ your coat ! It's really warm in here. (remove)
- 18- I'll _____ you _____ this time, but don't be late again because then you will have to leave. (allow entry)
- 19- Christmas is finished so we have to _____ the Christmas tree . (dismantle)
- 20- The concert didn't _____ my expectations. I expected something much better. (correspond)

LESSON 45

QUARTER TEST IX

Read the text below and then do the activity.

THE STREET ON FIRE

Last Saturday, Amanda, Mike and Alan went to the new modern art museum downtown. They were amazed by the works which were displayed there. It was the first time Amanda and Alan had been to a modern art gallery. Mike had seen many modern art galleries before. However, he hadn't seen such an interesting one. They stayed there for about three hours. While they were visiting the galleries, a famous artist came for a talk on his latest works. Alan and Mike went to the third floor to see him. While they listened to him, Amanda attended a workshop in the basement. By the time Amanda's workshop ended, Mike and Alan had already got out of the talk with the artist. After they visited all the galleries in the museum, they went downtown to have lunch together.

During their visit to the museum, they saw two very interesting photos of a street. In fact, the second picture was the edited version of the same street. In a minute they realized they were looking at the street where they currently live. It showed what would happen to it after an event like a fire or a war happened there. Until they saw those pictures, they had never thought of a disastrous event in a city. They were really scared to see their street on fire and then left the photos in silence.

A- Decide if the statements are true or false according to the text:

- 1- They all had been to modern art museum before. _____
- 2- They were in the museum before the talk of a famous artist _____
- 3- Mike and Amanda did two different activities at the same time in the museum _____
- 4- Amanda's workshop finished before Mike and Alan left the talk with the artist _____
- 5- They knew there were some pictures of their street before they saw them in the museum.

B- Choose the right translation for each phrase:

- | | | |
|------------------|----------------|---------------------|
| a) Alongar | a) pintar | 7- Ring |
| b) Ir ao longo | b) construir | a) Ligar de volta |
| c) Conviver | c) inventar | b) Anel |
| | | retornado |
| 2- Carry on with | 5- Look after | c) Anel |
| a) Carregar | a) Cuidar | 8- Look out |
| com | b) Olhar | a) Olhar pra |
| b) Continuar | depois | b) Efor taar alerta |
| c) Carregar no | c) Observar | c) Olhar externo |
| 3- Drop out of | 6- Give up | |
| a) Abandonar | a) Dar | 9- Get back at |
| b) Derrubar | b) Ir pra cima | a) Voltar na |
| c) Deixar cair | c) Desistir | b) Se vingar |
| | | c) Dar de volta |

LESSON 46

GENERAL REVIEW I

Praticando

I always study hard.
You usually work overtime.
He often plays soccer.
She sometimes works out.
She watched a nice movie yesterday. I worked until late last night.
You closed the store earlier on Monday.

Negative

She didn't like the food.
He didn't clean his bedroom.
They didn't cook for the guests.
We didn't plug the wire into the outlet.
The teacher didn't cancel the class.
She didn't reply the e-mail.
She didn't go shopping yesterday.
He didn't feel tired after the game.
They didn't know about the test.
We didn't buy a new house.
My boss didn't give me a raise.
I didn't hurt myself.

Interrogative

Did you cry when you dropped the ice cream?
Did he borrow his brother's jacket?
Did she need to send the report?
Did they skip classes to go out?
Did you try on the new suit?
Did it fit well on you?
Did you make the phone call?
Did he lose his wallet?
Did she see the e-mail I sent her?
Did they sell their house?
Did you sing at the festival?
Did we speak to the manager?

Praticando

Sempre estudo muito.
Você geralmente trabalha horas extras.
Ele frequentemente joga futebol.
Ela malha às vezes.
Ela assistiu a um bom filme ontem.
Eu trabalhei até tarde na noite passada.
Você fechou a loja mais cedo na segunda-feira.

Negative

Ela não gostou da comida.
Ele não limpou seu quarto.
Eles não cozinharam para os convidados.
Não conectamos o fio na tomada.
O professor não cancelou a aula.
Ela não respondeu ao e-mail.
Ela não foi às compras ontem.
Ele não se sentiu cansado após o jogo.
Eles não sabiam sobre o teste.
Não compramos uma casa nova.
Meu chefe não me deu um aumento.
Eu não me machuquei.

Interrogative

Você chorou quando deixou cair o sorvete?
Ele pegou emprestado o casaco do irmão?
Ela precisava enviar o relatório?
Eles faltaram às aulas para sair?
Você experimentou o novo terno?
Serviu bem em você?
Você fez a ligação?
Ele perdeu a carteira?
Ela viu o e-mail que lhe enviei?
Eles venderam a casa deles?
Você cantou no festival?
Falamos com o gerente?

LESSON 46

GENERAL REVIEW I

Practicing

There's milk in the fridge.
There are many people working today.
There's only one way to do that.
There are some options for you.
There's only one thing to do.
There are forty people applying for the position.
There is a book on your desk.
There are at least 200 people there.
There's a new movie coming up.
There are two buildings next to my house.
There were some fruits left.

Negative

There isn't anyone in the park.
There aren't twenty-five players on the field.
There is nothing to tell you.
There aren't enough people to help.
There's not a book in the box.
There are not books in the box.
There was nothing I needed to tell you.
There weren't forty-five students in class.
There wasn't a book in the box.
There weren't thirty-eight books in the box.

Interrogative

Are there twenty-five players in the field?
Is there any chance of winning?
Are there enough people to help?
Is there a book in the box?
Are there books in the box?
Were there twenty-five players on the field?
Was there any chance of winning?
Were there enough people to help?
Was there a book in the box?
Were there books in the box?

Praticando

Há leite na geladeira.
Há muitas pessoas trabalhando hoje.
Há apenas uma forma de fazer isso.
Existem algumas opções para você.
Há apenas uma coisa a fazer.
Há quarenta pessoas se candidatando para a vaga.
Tem um livro na sua escrivaninha.
Há pelo menos 200 pessoas lá.
Tem um filme novo a ser lançado.
Há dois prédios próximos à minha casa. Tinha algumas frutas sobrando.
Havia leite na geladeira.

Negativo

Não há ninguém no parque.
Não há vinte e cinco jogadores em campo.
Não há nada para te dizer.
Não há pessoas suficientes para ajudar.
Não há um livro na caixa.
Não há livros na caixa.
Não havia nada que eu precisasse te dizer.
Não havia quarenta e cinco alunos na aula.
Não havia um livro na caixa.
Não havia trinta e oito livros na caixa.

Interrogativo

Há 25 jogadores em campo?
Havia alguma chance de ganhar?
Tem pessoas suficientes para ajudar?
Há um livro na caixa?
Tem livros na caixa?
Havia vinte e cinco jogadores em campo?
Teve alguma chance de ganhar?
Havia pessoas suficientes para ajudar?
Havia um livro na caixa?
Havia livros na caixa?

LESSON 46

GENERAL REVIEW I

Practicing

I'll travel to the USA next year.
We'll go to the stadium on Sunday.
He will buy a new car when he gets the money.
She'll go to the club with her friends.
Danny will play checkers with his dad.
They'll need another job.
We'll learn English fast at Aliança.
I'm going to drink some coffee.
He is going to play soccer on weekends.

Praticando

Vou viajar para os EUA no próximo ano.
Vamos ao estádio no domingo.
Ele comprará um carro novo quando receber o dinheiro.
Ela irá ao clube com seus amigos.
Danny vai jogar damas com o pai dele.
Eles vão precisar de outro emprego.
Vamos aprender inglês rápido na Aliança.
Eu vou tomar um pouco de café.
Ele vai jogar futebol nos fins de semana.

Negative

I won't drive to work today.
She won't graduate if she keeps missing classes.
There won't be a party for us.
You won't play video games if you don't do your chores.

Negativo

Não vou dirigir para o trabalho hoje.
Ela não vai se formar se continuar faltando às aulas.
Não haverá uma festa para nós.
Você não jogará videogame se não fizer suas tarefas.

Interrogative

Will you buy me a snack? I'm hungry.
Will she learn English at Aliança América?
Will we do the job with the other workers?
Will the school be open on holidays?
Will they bring me the items I asked for?
Are you going to study French with me?
Is he going to go to the movies this weekend?
Are they going to write the reports today?
Is he going to eat the soup I made?
Is she going to become the president next election?
Is it going to rain more this year?

Interrogativo

Você vai me comprar um lanche? Eu estou com fome.
Ela aprenderá inglês na Aliança América?
Faremos o trabalho com os outros trabalhadores?
A escola estará aberta nos feriados?
Eles vão me trazer os itens que eu pedi?
Você vai estudar francês comigo?
Ele irá ao cinema neste fim de semana?
Eles vão escrever os relatórios hoje?
Ele vai comer a sopa que fiz?
Ela vai se tornar a presidente na próxima eleição?

Vai chover mais este ano?

LESSON 46

GENERAL REVIEW I

Practicing

They'll be opening a new business.
He'll be playing on a professional team.
The teacher will be applying the test.
I'll be suing you over the deal you made wrongly.

Praticando

Eles estarão abrindo um novo negócio.
Ele estará jogando em um time profissional.
O professor estará aplicando a prova.
Eu estarei te processando por conta do acordo que você fez erroneamente.

Negative

They won't be getting good grades.
I hope it won't be raining when we go there.
You won't be getting a lot of work to do.
She won't be making part of the team.
You won't go bowling with your friends today.

Negativo

Eles não estarão tirando boas notas.
Espero que não esteja chovendo quando formos lá.
Você não estará recebendo muito trabalho para fazer.
Ela não estará fazendo parte do time.
Você não irá jogar boliche com seus amigos hoje.

Interrogative

Will we be getting a nice gift next birthday?
I'll you be going to the new beauty salon?
Will she be going to the mall by herself?
Would it take a lot of time to get there?
Would he prepare the reports on time?
Would she teach me how to ride a bike?
Would they run a marathon?
Would you jump off a cliff?
Would he be capable of hurting the kids?
When will the war end?
Where will we be in the next 20 years?
What will they do to keep the business running?

Interrogativo

Estaremos recebendo um presente legal no próximo aniversário?
Você estará indo para o novo salão de beleza?
Ela estará indo ao shopping sozinha?
Levaria muito tempo para chegar lá?
Ele prepararia os relatórios dentro do prazo?
Ela me ensinaria a andar de bicicleta?
Eles(as) correriam uma maratona?

Você pularia de um penhasco?
Ele seria capaz de machucar as crianças?
Quando a guerra terminará?
Onde estaremos nos próximos 20 anos?
O que eles farão para manter o negócio funcionando?

LESSON 47

GENERAL REVIEW II

Praticando

I can run really fast.
You can talk to the boss without my permission.
They could go to the beach.

You could talk to me.
It can happen.
You could play the guitar when you were little.
They can drive a big truck.
It may rain tomorrow.
He might come to the party later.
You may go outside to play with your friends.
They might talk to him about the project.
She might be tired after the game.

Negative

He can't go to school tomorrow.
I couldn't talk to you.
She can't speak Russian.
They can't cook, so they ordered pizza.
They can't drive well. They had 3 accidents already.
We can't go there by ourselves.
He couldn't do it better.
I shouldn't ride a bike in the park.
We couldn't close the deal due to the prices.
He may not be here after the speech.
I might not go to the bank because it's hot.
She may not be the right person for the position.
They might not sleep over their friend's house.
They may not understand if you say it in Spanish.
You shouldn't give up studies.

Interrogative

Could you help me, please?
Can I go out tonight?
Could they prepare the room?
Could the doctor be more polite?
Could you explain this subject again?
May I borrow your pencil?
May we come a bit later tomorrow?
Might they have something to drink?
Might I attend the meeting too?
Should I stay here to help you with the errands?
Must he come to talk to you?
Should she take a lot of money with her?
Should it be placed on this spot?
Must they visit their parents more?

Praticando

Eu posso correr bem rápido

Você pode falar com o chefe sem minha permissão.
Eles poderiam ir para a praia.
Você poderia falar comigo.
Pode acontecer.
Você sabia tocar violão quando era pequeno.

Eles conseguem dirigir um caminhão grande.
Pode chover amanhã.
Pode ser que ele venha para a festa mais tarde.
Você pode sair para brincar com seus amigos.
Pode ser que eles falem com ele sobre o projeto.
Ela pode estar cansada depois do jogo.

Negativo

Ele não pode ir para a escola amanhã.
Eu não consegui falar com você.
Ela não sabe falar russo.
Eles não sabem cozinhar, então pediram pizza.
Eles não podem dirigir bem. Eles já tiveram 3 acidentes.
Não podemos ir lá sozinhos.
Ele não poderia fazê-lo melhor.
Eu não deveria andar de bicicleta no parque.
Não pudemos fechar o acordo devido aos preços.
Ele pode não estar aqui depois do discurso.
Posso não ir ao banco porque está calor.
Ela pode não ser a pessoa certa para o cargo.
Eles podem não dormir na casa do amigo deles.
Eles podem não entender se você disser em espanhol.
Você não deveria desistir dos seus estudos.

Interrogativo

Você poderia me ajudar, por favor?
Posso sair esta noite?
Eles poderiam preparar a sala?
O médico poderia ser mais educado?
Você poderia explicar esse assunto novamente?
Posso pegar seu lápis emprestado?
Podemos vir um pouco mais tarde amanhã?
Eles podem ter algo para beber?
Posso participar da reunião também?
Devo ficar aqui para te ajudá com as tarefas?
Ele deve vir falar com você?
Ela deveria levar muito dinheiro com ela?

Deveria ser colocado neste local?
Devem visitar mais os pais?

LESSON 47

GENERAL REVIEW II

Practicing

I study English. **Me too / So do I.**
 He can swim. **Me too / So can I.**
 They speak English. **Us too / So do we.**
 She should go. **You too / So do you.**
 I'll work tomorrow. **Me too / So will I.**
 We run fast. **Them too / So do they.**
 I have a laptop. **Me too / So do I.**
 They saved the day. **Us too / So did we.**
 He went to the beach. **Me too / So did I.**

Negative

I don't like pizza. **I don't either / Neither do I.**
 We don't go out often. **I don't either / Neither do I.**
 He didn't do the homework. **She didn't either. Neither did she.**
 They won't shave their heads. **I won't either / Neither will I.**
 You shouldn't eat it. **We shouldn't either / Neither should we.**
 They can't afford it. **She can't either / Neither can she.**
 The teachers won't quit. **I won't either / Neither will I.**

Interrogative

Do you like to go fast?
 Can he kindly help us?
 Is she a beautiful girl?
 Does she speak beautifully?
 Did the workers work hard today?
 Why is he driving recklessly?
 Can't they just do it well?
 Are you singing happily?
 Did they sell their house quickly?

Praticando

Eu estudo inglês. **Eu também.**
 Ele sabe nadar. **Eu também.**
 Eles(as) falam inglês. **Nós também.**
 Ela deveria ir. **Você também.**
 Trabalharei amanhã. **Eu também.**
 Nós corremos rápido. **Eles também.**
 Eu tenho um notebook. **Eu também.**
 Eles(as) salvaram a vida. **Nós também.**
 Ele foi à praia. **Eu também.**

Negativo

Eu não gosto de pizza. **Eu também não.**
 Não saímos com frequência. **Eu também não.**
 Ele não fez o dever de casa. **Eu também não.**
 Eles não rasparam suas cabeças. **Ela também não.**
 Você não deveria comê-lo. **Eu também não.**
 Eles não aguentam isso. **Ela também não.**
 Os professores não se demitirão. **Eu também não.**

Interrogativo

Você gosta de ir rapidamente?
 Ele pode nos ajudar gentilmente?
 Ela é uma linda garota?
 Ela fala belamente?
 Os trabalhadores trabalharam duramente hoje?
 Por que ele está dirigindo imprudentemente?
 Eles não conseguem simplesmente fazer isso bem?
 Você está cantando contentemente?
 Eles venderam a casa deles rapidamente?

LESSON 47

GENERAL REVIEW II

Praticando

If I put my hands in the fire, they burn.
If I miss the 06 o'clock bus, I arrive late at work.
If I go to the store, I buy something.
If he gets late at work, the boss gets angry.
The floor gets wet if we throw some water on it.
Ice melts if we leave it outside the freezer.
When temperature is below 0°C it snows.
If it rains, I use an umbrella.
I use an umbrella when it rains.
If the weather is nice, I will go to the park.

I ask for help when I need it.
If she loses her job, she will look for another one.
They will go to the beach if it gets hot.
If you do it for me, I will pay you.
You will earn more when you graduate.

Negative

If you don't study hard, you won't pass the test.
I won't get tired if I don't play soccer.
If she doesn't go, she won't spend money.
I wouldn't go out if it was dark.
He wouldn't buy the car if he didn't have money.
You wouldn't be so tired if you went to bed earlier.
They wouldn't hurt themselves if they didn't fall.

Interrogative

Do you get cold when you get wet from the rain?
What will you do if you win the lottery?
Does he buy anything if he goes to the store?
Do they do the homework if their mom asks them?
Will you take us there if I pay you a good amount?
Will he get hurt if he falls from the stairs?
Will the company fire him if he doesn't do the job?
Does she do the groceries if she goes to the store?
What would you do if you were me?
Where would they go if they had the chance?
Would she travel if she was on vacation?
If they were here, what would they do?
If they knew, would they tell her?

Praticando

Se eu coloco minhas mãos no fogo, elas queimam.
Se eu perco o ônibus das 06h, chego atrasado no trabalho.
Se vou à loja, compro alguma coisa.
Se ele se atrasa para o trabalho, seu chefe fica zangado.
O chão fica molhado se jogarmos um pouco de água.
O gelo derrete se o deixarmos fora do congelador.
Quando a temperatura está abaixo de 0°C, neva.
Se chove, uso um guarda-chuva.
Eu uso um guarda-chuva se chover.
Se o tempo estiver bom, irei ao parque.
Peço ajuda quando preciso.
Se ela perder o emprego, ela procurará outro.
Eles irão para a praia se ficar calor.
Se você fizer isso por mim, eu vou te pagar.
Você vai ganhar mais quando se formar.

Negative

Se você não estudar muito, não vai passar no teste.
Eu não vou me cansar se eu não jogar futebol.
Se ela não for, não gastará dinheiro.
Eu não sairia se estivesse escuro.
Ele não compraria o carro se não tivesse dinheiro.
Você não estaria tão cansado se fosse para a cama mais cedo.
Eles não se machucariam se não caíssem o tempo todo.

Interrogative

Você fica com frio quando se molha na chuva?
O que você fará se ganhar na loteria?
Ele compra alguma coisa se for à loja?
Eles fazem o dever de casa se a mãe lhes pedir?
Você nos levará lá se eu te pagar uma boa quantia?
Ele vai se machucar se cair da escada?
A empresa irá despedi-lo se ele não fizer o trabalho?
Ela faz as compras se vai ao mercado?
O que você faria se você fosse eu?
Para onde eles iriam se tivessem a chance?
Ela viajaria se estivesse de férias?
Se eles estivessem aqui, o que fariam?
Se eles soubessem, eles diriam a ela?

LESSON 47

GENERAL REVIEW II

Practicing

I used to ride a bike when I was a kid.
They used to play in a band.
My parents used to go out at night.
She is used to riding her bike with her daughter.
They are used to doing their grocery every weekend.
I'm used to working overtime.
We are used to the cold weather.
I have had this car for 20 years.
He has had this attitude since his mom passed away.
He's known her for decades.

Negative

We didn't use to swim in the water park.
The pool was deep.
She didn't use to ride a bike when she was a kid.
The children aren't used to waking up early.
I'm not used to driving in a big city.
I haven't seen my family since last year.
The kids haven't played computer games for 2 weeks.
We haven't been to the mall for a year.
They haven't taken any vacation since the new boss.
The kids haven't been to Disney yet.
She hasn't finished the report.

Interrogative

Did he use to go camping with his cousins?
Are you used to buying at that store over there?
Did you use to take a ride back home?
Did we use to do exercises after dinner?
Are you used to working out at the gym?
Are they used to staying out late?
Is he used to practicing martial arts over the weekends?
Did they use to buy gifts for the whole family?
Did he use to do business with foreigners?
Have you spoken English since you were a kid?
Have they worked on the project for very long?
For how long have you studied English?
Have we bought this merchandise since May?
Has it controlled the market since the last crisis?
Has he been able to work since yesterday?
Have you driven as a professional for months?

Praticando

Eu costumava andar de bicicleta quando era criança.
Eles costumavam tocar em uma banda.
Meus pais costumavam sair à noite.
Ela está acostumada a andar de bicicleta com a filha dela.
Eles estão acostumados a fazer suas compras todo fim de semana.
Estou acostumada a trabalhar horas extras.
Estamos acostumados com o tempo frio.
Eu tenho esse carro há 20 anos.
Ele tem tido essa atitude desde que a mãe dele faleceu.
Ele a conhece há décadas.

Negativo

Não costumávamos nadar no parque aquático.
A piscina era funda.
Ela não costumava andar de bicicleta quando era criança.
As crianças não estão acostumadas a acordar cedo.
Não estou acostumado a dirigir em uma cidade grande.
Não tenho visto minha família desde o ano passado.
As crianças não têm jogado jogos de computador por 2 semanas.
Não temos ido ao shopping há um ano.
Eles não tiraram férias desde o novo chefe.
As crianças ainda não estiveram na Disney.
Ela não terminou o relatório.

Interrogativo

Ele costumava acampar com seus primos?
Você está acostumada a comprar naquela loja ali?
Você costumava pegar uma carona de volta para casa?
Costumávamos fazer exercícios depois do jantar?
Você está acostumado a malhar na academia?
Eles estão acostumados a ficar fora até tarde?
Ele está acostumado a praticar artes marciais nos fins de semana?
Costumavam comprar presentes para toda a família?
Ele costumava fazer negócios com estrangeiros?
Você fala inglês desde que era criança?
Eles trabalharam no projeto por muito tempo?
Há quanto tempo você tem estudado inglês?
Temos comprado essa mercadoria desde maio?
Tem controlado o mercado desde a última crise?
Ele tem conseguido trabalhar desde ontem?
Você tem dirigido como profissional há meses?

LESSON 48

FINAL TEST

A- Complete the sentences below with the verbs in parentheses using the correct verb tense.

- 1- They _____ in Boston for over 20 years (live).
- 2- I _____ a great action movie with my friends last night. (see)
- 3- The milk _____ very early yesterday morning (be deliver)
- 4- The sun _____ when the climber reached Mount Everest. (shine)
- 5- I promise that I _____ this secret to anyone (not tell)
- 6- Unfortunately, just as we got to the airport their plane _____ off (take).
- 7- They _____ to the movies only once in a while (go)
- 8- I was tired yesterday because I _____ well the night before (not sleep).
- 9- Shhh! Someone _____ to our conversation (listen)!
- 10- When I left the house this morning, it _____ (already rain)
- 11- I think Bob _____ for work right now. (leave)
- 12- The plane _____ off in a few minutes. (take)
- 13- I _____ up at 7 every morning but this morning I _____ long and I _____ up until 8. (get, sleep, not get)
- 14- I _____ my watch because it is being fixed (not wear).
- 15- This _____ an easy quiz so far (be).
- 16- They _____ in an apartment right now because they can't find a cheap house. (live)
- 17- Everyone _____ when the earthquake hit the small town. (sleep)
- 18- She _____ by herself since her divorce (live)
- 19- I was angry that I _____ such a stupid mistake (make).
- 20- I predict that by 2025, man _____ on Mars (land)
- 21- He _____ his job a couple of years ago. (quit)
- 22- Our daughter _____ from the university yet (graduate).
- 23- They _____ any Christmas cards last year (not send)
- 24- She _____ to a doctor once a year for an examination (go)
- 25- They _____ about me when I interrupted their conversation. (talk)
- 26- Nothing much _____ when I got to the meeting (happen).
- 27- My parents _____ in New York two weeks from today (be)

LESSON 48

FINAL TEST

B- Read the text below and translate it into Portuguese:

PRIMAVERA DO LESTE CITY

Most towns or cities in Brazil usually take a strong pride in their historic past and have at least a few old buildings or monuments standing witness to earlier days. But in Primavera do Leste, a booming agribusiness town 230 kilometers east of Mato Grosso's state capital, Cuiabá, the oldest historic landmark you will find is a common filling station and truck stop with a banner saying: "Where it all began". Where a few years ago there was virtually nothing but dust-covered savanna and patches of stunted growth, thousands of acres of soy and cotton fields now spread out as far as the eye can see, earning millions of dollars on 10 world markets and turning the still small city into one of Brazil's latest new economic hubs. Regional roads and telecommunications, however, are two aspects local entrepreneurs and producers point out as very precarious, forming obstacles to further growth seriously affecting production and marketing costs. Founded only 17 years ago, everything in Primavera, as it is usually referred to, is new - from its modern architecture to its growing population. Only the very young can proudly say they were born here. Valentim Martignano, one of the district's oldest pioneers arrived here from Paraná state some 22 years ago, "All I saw was a gas station, a general store six houses and a lot of dust," he recalls. Today the modern town boasts 50,000 inhabitants, and 20 projections by the Brazilian institute of Geography and Statistics (IBGE) are of a population of 100,000 in five years' time.

(From UPDATE, by William Vanvolsen, p.24, May/2003, American Chamber of Commerce publication)

Now, translate the text:

Answer the questions:

1- She goes to the movies with her friends. (*sometimes*)

She sometimes goes to the movies with her friends. / She goes to the movies with her friends sometimes. / Sometimes she goes to the movies with her friends.

2- He watches the news before going to college. (*always*)

He always watches the news before going to college.

3- They play baseball at Foxborough Stadium (*every Sunday*).

They play baseball every Sunday at Foxborough Stadium. / They play baseball at

4- They play baseball every Sunday at Foxborough Stadium.

The children never go out alone. It's dangerous. / The children go out alone.

It's never dangerous.

5- I eat red meat. (*never*) dangerous

I never eat red meat.

Answer the questions:

2- He always goes to the movies with his friends. / He sometimes goes to the movies with his friends.

3- He always watches the news before going to college. / He sometimes watches the news before going to college.

4- They play baseball every Sunday at Foxborough Stadium. / They play baseball at Foxborough Stadium every Sunday.

5- He never goes to the movies with his friends. / He goes to the movies with his friends.

6- He sometimes goes grocery shopping on Fridays. / He goes grocery shopping on Fridays.

She sometimes goes grocery shopping on Fridays. / Sometimes she goes grocery shopping on Fridays. / She goes grocery shopping on Fridays sometimes. / On Fridays, she sometimes goes grocery shopping

Respostas do INTERMEDIATE ENGLISH,
referente lição 01, PG 04

Answer the questions:

Before the main verb

often / sometimes / usually / always / occasionally /
seldom / rarely / never

At the end of the clause

once (a day) / twice (a week) / three times
(a month) / sometimes / several times (a
year) / hourly / daily / monthly / yearly /
every hour / every day / every month /
every year / on Saturdays / on weekdays /
at weekends / once in a while /
once in a blue moon / on Sundays /
occasionally

Paul – Graig, com que frequência você sai com seus amigos para se divertir?

Paul - Graig, how often do you hang out with your friends?

Graig – Eu saio com eles todos os finais de semana, e você?

Graig - I go out with them every weekend, what about you?

Paul – Eu dificilmente saio com meus amigos aos finais de semana, porque eu sempre estudo para as provas.

Mas às vezes eu os convido para vir estudar em casa.

I seldom go out with my friends on weekends because I always study for the tests. But sometimes I invite them over to study.

Graig – Isso é bacana, Paul. Eu nunca estudo para provas, eu geralmente dou uma olhada no assunto poucas horas antes.

That's cool, Paul. I never study for tests. I usually take a look at the subject a few hours before.

Paul – De vez em quando eu faço isso. Mas apenas quando eu estou muito cansado para estudar nos finais de semana.

I sometimes do this. But only when I'm too tired to study on weekends.

Answer the questions:

every weekend

seldom

on weekends

always

never

usually

Complete the sentences:

1. (play) with my friends.
2. Jeff didn't want (not / want) to play with us.
3. My father called (call) us and we talked (talk) for a while.
4. We watched (watch) movie but I didn't like (not / like) very much.
5. She played (play) the guitar.
6. It rained (rain), so I didn't want (not / want) to go out.
7. Mom cooked (cook) and we helped (help) her.
8. My cousin didn't like (not / like) the meal.

Complete the sentences:

- 1- She decided to travel to Japan.

(Negative) She didn't decide to travel to Japan.

(Interrogative) Did she decide to travel to Japan?

- 2- They shopped for hours yesterday.

(Negative) They didn't shop for hours yesterday.

(Interrogative) Did they shop for hours yesterday?

- 3- Paul cooked dinner for his parents

(Negative) Paul didn't cook dinner for his parents.

(Interrogative) Did Paul cook dinner for his parents?

- 4- We arrived late at school this morning.

(Negative) We didn't arrive late at school this morning.

(Interrogative) Did we arrive late at school this morning?

- 5- We finished the test before the expected time.

(Negative) We didn't finish the test before the expected time.

(Interrogative) Did we finish the test before the expected time?

Complete the sentences:

- | | |
|----------------------|---|
| 1- Cook dinner | <u>I cooked dinner on Sunday or I didn't cook dinner on Sunday.</u> |
| 2- Clean the house | <u>I cleaned the house on Saturday.</u> |
| 3- Listen to music | <u>I didn't listen to music last weekend.</u> |
| 4- Call your friends | <u>I called my friends every day last weekend.</u> |
| 5- Study English | <u>I didn't study English on Saturday, but I did it on Sunday.</u> |
| 6- Stay home | <u>I stayed home on Saturday and Sunday.</u> |
| 7- Watch a game | <u>I didn't watch a game with my dad last Sunday.</u> |
| 8- Work out | <u>I worked out three times last weekend.</u> |

Lição 02, PG 8

Answer the questions:

What did Paul and Susie do in the afternoon?

In the afternoon they visited different places and played at a famous casino.

Did they learn a lot of English?

Yes, they learned a lot of English.

What did they do on the weekend?

They traveled to the surroundings and visited all the monuments like Big Ben,
The London Eye and Buckingham Palace.

Did they walk through the city?

Yes, they walked around the city in the morning.

What did they do when they waved goodbye to their new friends?

They cried a little and promised to write or send emails when they arrived.

How often did they listen to English?

They listened to English all day long, every single day.

Respostas do INTERMEDIATE ENGLISH,
referente lição 03, PG 11

Answer the questions:

- 1- On Sunday, Jenna saw a movie. She didn't see a play. her home didn't d. o
- 2- On Monday, she read a magazine. She didn't read a book and _____
- 3- On Tuesday, Jenna had English classes and _____ her homework. didn't she the history paper.
- 4- On Wednesday, Jenna didn't write shopping with friends and did her homework. She went the news.
- 5- On Thursday, Jenna didn't read lunch. She went to the museum and did her homework. didn't make
- 6- On Friday, Jenna went grocery shopping and went to a party but she didn't her homework. had
- 7- On Saturday, Jenna didn't read a novel. had

Answer the questions:

B- Write true sentences about your last week.

- | | |
|-------------|--|
| 1 Sunday | On Sunday, I ate ice cream with my family. <u>didn't</u> |
| 2 Monday | I rode my bike to work last Monday. <u>didn't</u> |
| 3 Tuesday | On Tuesday, my brothers came to my house. <u>didn't</u> |
| 4 Wednesday | I wore pink on Wednesday. <u>didn't</u> |
| 5 Thursday | On Thursday, I didn't see my friends. <u>didn't</u> |
| 6 Friday | I didn't study a lot on Friday. <u>didn't</u> |
| 7 Saturday | Last Saturday was a good day for me. <u>didn't</u> |

Answer the questions:

C- Translate the sentences below into English using simple past of the irregular verbs.

1. Eu fui fazer compras com a minha mãe e minha irmã.

I went shopping with my mother and my sister.

2. Ela não fez o dever de casa.

She didn't do her homework.

3. Você comprou tudo o que eu coloquei na lista?

Did you buy everything I put on the list?

4. O que ele fez na noite passada?

What did he do on the last night?

5. O que ela ganhou de aniversário no ano passado?

What did she get for her birthday last year?

6. Eu não tive que fazer hora extra porque a máquina quebrou.

I didn't have to do overtime because the machine broke.

7. Nós enviamos todas as mercadorias pelo correio no mês passado.

We sent all the goods by post last month.

8. Paul ganhou na loteria, comprou uma mansão e deu dinheiro para seus amigos.

Paul won the lottery, bought a mansion and gave money to his friends.

Complete the sentences:

Yesterday I w_o_k_e_u_p_ (wake up) earlier than the usual because I h_a_d_ (have) to take my car to the mechanic. I m_a_d_e_ (make) breakfast for the family and I s_a_w_ (saw) the news on my cell phone, and right after that I t_o_o_k_ (take) a hot shower.

After I t_o_o_k_ (take) my car to the mechanic, I h_a_d_ (have) to hail a cab to get to work in time. Right after I g_o_t_ (got) to the office, I r_e_a_d_ (read) my e-mails and s_e_n_t_ (send) responses to my customers. I also h_a_d_ (have) a meeting with the team and w_e_n_t_ (go) pretty well.

Respostas do INTERMEDIATE ENGLISH,
referente lição 03, PG 12

Answer the questions:

E – Write down the preterite of the following verbs.

Begin – **began**
Break – **broke**
Bring – **brought**
Come – **came**
Cost – **cost**
Do – **did**
Drive – **drove**
Drink – **drank**
Eat – **ate**

Feel – **felt**
Fly – **flew**
Forget – **forgot**
Get – **got**
Give – **gave**
Have – **had**
Hear – **heard**
Hold – **held**
Leave – **left**

Let – **let**
Meet – **met**
Make – **made**
Pay – **paid**
Put – **put**
Run – **ran**
Say – **said**
See – **saw**
Take – **took**
-

Lição 04, PG 15

Complete the sentences:

"My wife and I w_e_r_e guests at a hotel in Orlando last month.
Unfortunately, we w_e_r_e_n'_t happy with our room. It wa_s messy and
clean wa_s. The bed wa_s terrible. Another point to take in consideration the
fact that you said the location wa_s near the beach, but it wa_s
The noise at night wa_s awful. But the people at the hotel w_e_r_e nice to
us. So that wa_s excellent".



Lição 04, PG 15

B – Write questions for the answers below using the verb 'to be' in the simple past:

- 1- H_o_w_w_a_s_th_e_trip_to_D_u_b_a_i? ? It was great.
- 2- W_a_s_th_e_lecture_i_n_t_e_r_e_s_t_i_n_g? ? Yes, the lecture was interesting.
- 3- W_e_r_e_y_o_u_a_t_w_o_r_k_l_a_s_t_T_u_e_s_d_a_y? ? I was sick at home.
- 4- W_e_r_e_y_o_u_a_t_t_h_e_s_u_p_e_r_m_a_r_k_e_t_y_e_s_t_e_r_d_a_y? ? No, I wasn't there.
- 5- W_e_r_e_y_o_u_a_t_c_h_u_r_c_h_o_n_S_u_n_d_a_y? ? Yes, we were at church.
- 6- W_h_e_r_e_w_e_r_e_y_o_u_r_s_i_b_l_i_n_g_s_l_a_s_t_D_e_c_e_m_b_e_r? ? My siblings were there.

Respostas do INTERMEDIATE ENGLISH,
referente lição 04, PG 15

Answer the questions:

C – Translate the sentences below:

1- Peter estava cansado demais para ir ao jogo.

Peter was too tired to go to the game.

2- Estávamos certos sobre o relatório?

We were right about the report?

3- Vocês eram pequenos demais para entender isso.

You were too little to understand this.

4- Ele era professor naquele colégio estadual?

Was he a teacher at that state school?

5- Ela estava muito bonita na festa.

She was very beautiful at the party.

6- Não era esse carro que eu queria comprar.

It wasn't this car that I wanted to buy.

7- Ele estava feliz porque tirou 10 na prova.

He was happy because he got a 10 on the test.

8- Eu não estava no trabalho na noite passada.

I wasn't at work last night.

Lição 04, PG 16

Answer the questions:

E – Answer the questions according to the text above:

1- Where were Bob and his siblings last week?

They were in San Francisco.

2- How was the weather there?

It was cloudy and the sun wasn't so hot.

3- Were they happy about San Francisco?

Yes, they were happy about San Francisco.

4- How was the baseball game?

The baseball game was awesome.

5- Were they happy about going back home?

No, they weren't.

Complete the sentences:

F – Complete the sentences below with *was/were/wasn't/weren't*.

- 1- John and Bob w e r e n ' t at work yesterday, I saw them at the beach.
- 2- The customers _____ happy with the new manager. She was lovely.
- 3- Susie w a s n ' t home when the postman went there, so he left the package at the porch.
- 4- All the people at the festival w e r e amazed by the song.
- 5- The cops w e r e on strike for better benefits.

G – Answer the question below with your own information.

1-Where were you last night?

I was at my cousin's birthday party.

2- Were your parents happy about your grades when you were in school?

Yes, they were very happy because I never got bad grades.

3- What was the weather like last Sunday?

It was sunny, but cold.

Lição 05, PG 17

always usually

rarely occasionally

often

never

every time

every day

once in a while

B- Identify all the verbs in the text and write them in the present and preterite forms.

Present – Preterite

want - wanted

(be) am / is / are - was / were

watch - watched

go - went

remember - remembered

see - saw

say - said

lose - lost

happen - happened

check - checked

occur - occurred

Present – Preterite

ask - asked

take - took

know - knew

do - did

keep - kept

look - looked

pass - passed

grow - grew

have - had

try - tried

talk - talked

Present – Preterite

share - shared

Answer the questions:

A – Unscramble the sentences below and make affirmative, negative and interrogative sentences in the past continuous.

1- Jason / cooking / for his friends / was / dinner

Affirmative: Jason was cooking dinner for his friends.

Negative: Jason wasn't cooking dinner for his friends.

Interrogative: Was Jason cooking dinner for his friends?

2- Pat and Jorge / to London / traveling / were.

Affirmative: Pat and Jorge were traveling to London.

Negative: Pat and Jorge weren't traveling to London.

Interrogative: Were Pat and Jorge traveling to London?

3- Playing / on the weekend / They / soccer / were.

Affirmative: They were playing soccer on the weekend.

Negative: They weren't playing soccer on the weekend.

Interrogative: Were they playing soccer on the weekend?

4- A movie / Sam / was / last night / watching.

Affirmative: Sam was watching a movie last night.

Negative: Sam wasn't watching a movie last night.

Interrogative: Was Sam watching a movie last night?

5- To music / listening / The children / were / arrived / when / we.

Affirmative: The children were listening to music when we arrived.

Negative: The children weren't listening to music when we arrived.

Interrogative: Were the children listening to music when we arrived?

6- Fun / The people / having / a lot of / were / at the park.

Affirmative: The people were having a lot of fun at the park.

Negative: The people weren't having a lot of fun at the park.

Interrogative: Were the people having a lot of fun at the park?

7- gave / eating / I / The dog / the bone / was / it.

Affirmative: The dog was eating the bone I gave it.

Negative: The dog wasn't eating the bone I gave it.

Interrogative: Was the dog eating the bone I gave it?

Complete the sentences:

B- Complete the paragraph with the verbs in parentheses.

Last month I was t_r_a_v_e_l_i_n_g (travel) to Hawaii with my family and we didn't have a good time at a restaurant there. We were h_a_v_i_n_g (have) breakfast and the waiter spilled some coffee on us when he was s_e_r_v_i_n_g (serve). He wasn't p_a_y_i_n_g (pay) attention to what he was d_o_i_n_g (do). So, we were really upset because we were g_o_i_n_g (go) downtown right after breakfast.

C – Answer the questions according to the text above:

1- Where were Jack and his family last month?

2- ~~They were~~ They were ~~in~~ in ~~Hawaii~~ Hawaii ~~dinner~~ dinner at the restaurant?

3- ~~No, they weren't~~ No, they weren't ~~they were~~ they were ~~having~~ having ~~breakfast~~ breakfast ~~after~~ after ~~the~~ the ~~restaurant~~ restaurant?

4- ~~What did the waiter spill on them?~~ What did the waiter spill on them?

5- ~~He spilled the coffee on them~~ He spilled the coffee on them ~~with~~ with ~~the~~ the ~~waiter~~ waiter?

No, they weren't.

D – Complete the sentences below with the past continuous of the verbs given:

1- John and Bob were telling (tell) their friends a funny story about their trip.

2- I was doing (do) the laundry when my phone rang.

3- Susie was listening (listen) to music last night.

4- My friend and I were having (have) dinner at home when the lights went off.

5- The cops were running (run) after the thieves who robbed a bank

E – Answer the questions below about your own information.

1- What were you doing at this time yesterday?

I was working out at the gym.

2- ~~They were~~ They were ~~living~~ living ~~before~~ before ~~they got married~~ they got married?

3- Where were you traveling to on your last vacation?

I was traveling to Paris with my siblings.

Answer the questions:

A – Translate the sentences below into the affirmative, negative and interrogative forms.

1-Há muita poluição nas cidades grandes.

Affirmative: There's a lot of pollution in the big cities.

Negative: There isn't a lot of pollution in the big cities.

Interrogative: Is there a lot of pollution in the big cities?

2-Tem um clube novo que podemos ir aos finais de semana.

Affirmative: There's a new club that we can go to on the weekends.

Negative: There isn't a new club that we can go to on the weekends.

Interrogative: Is there a new club that we can go to on the weekends?

3-Tem alguém aqui para me ajudar a descarregar a mercadoria.

Affirmative: There is someone here to help me unload the goods.

Negative: There isn't anyone here to help me unload the goods.

Interrogative: Is there anyone here to help me unload the goods?

4-Tem dois homens estranhos do lado de fora da loja.

Affirmative: There are two strange men outside the shop.

Negative: There aren't two strange men outside the shop.

Interrogative: Are there two strange men outside the shop?

5-Tem uma prateleira bonita no quarto.

Affirmative: There's a beautiful shelf in the bedroom.

Negative: There isn't a beautiful shelf in the bedroom.

Interrogative: Is there a beautiful shelf in the bedroom?

6-Tem um cinema moderno nesta cidade.

Affirmative: There's a modern movie theater in this town.

Negative: There isn't a modern movie theater in this town.

Interrogative: Is there a modern movie theater in this town?

7-Há vinte e cinco estudantes de inglês para fazer a prova.

Affirmative: There are twenty-five English students to take the test.

Negative: There aren't twenty-five English students to take the test.

Interrogative: Are there twenty-five English students to take the test?

Complete the sentences:

B- Complete this conversation at a hotel with **there is**, **there are**, **there isn't** e **there aren't**.

Tourist - Excuse me, is there an ATM machine around here?

Concierge - Yes, there is one right across from the drugstore. Go straight down the street for about two blocks and then turn left on Oak Rd. You will see it on your right hand side.

Tourist - Ok, and are there restaurants near the hotel? We're hungry and need to find a place to eat. **Concierge** - Yes, there are many. Take a look at these menus here and the address of each one of them.

Tourist - Perfect, I really appreciate it. And one last question. is there a grocery store on this street?

Concierge - No, there isn't. Actually, there are grocery stores in this neighborhood. You'll have to go downtown to find one.

C - Choose the right alternative for the sentences below:

1- _____ many people at the newstand to get the new sport magazine.

a) There is b) There **c) There are**

2- _____ a group of workers willing to go on strike due to low-wage jobs.

a) There b) There are **c) There is**

3- _____ a lost dog wandering on the street for hours.

a) Have **b) There is** c) There are

4- _____ many people _____ at the party?

a) Is there b) have **c) are there**

4- _____ any food left in the fridge. We need to go grocery shopping.

a) There aren't **b) There isn't** c) There have

D - Look at the picture and write sentences about what you see using there is and there are.

1) There is a TV attached to the wall.

2) There are two blue sofas.

3) There is a table in the middle of the room.

4) There are three lamps on the ceiling.

5) There is a portrait on the corner.

6) There is a houseplant near the TV.

Answer the questions:

A – Translate the sentences below into affirmative, negative and interrogative forms.

1. Havia 15 funcionários de férias.

Affirmative: There were fifteen employees on vacation.
Negative: There weren't fifteen employees on vacation.

2. Tinha muitas lojas de roupas naquele shopping.

Interrogative: Were there many clothing stores at that mall?
Affirmative: There were many clothing stores at that mall.
Negative: There weren't many clothing stores at that mall.
Interrogative: Were there many clothing stores at that mall?

3. Havia um grande supermercado neste bairro.

Affirmative: There was a big supermarket in this neighborhood.
Negative: There wasn't a big supermarket in this neighborhood.

4. Existiam diferentes formas de viajar no passado.

Interrogative: Were there different ways to travel in the past?
Affirmative: There were different ways to travel in the past.
Negative: There weren't different ways to travel in the past.
Interrogative: Were there different ways to travel in the past?

5. Tinha duas pessoas procurando por você.

Interrogative: Were there two people looking for you?
Affirmative: There were two people looking for you.
Negative: There weren't two people looking for you.
Interrogative: Were there two people looking for you?

6. Havia um grande lago aqui antes da cidade ser construída.

Affirmative: There was a big lake here before the city was built.
Negative: There wasn't a big lake here before the city was built.

7. Existiam várias provas sobre conspirações na segunda guerra mundial.

Interrogative: Was there much proof of conspiracies in World War II?
Affirmative: There was much proof of conspiracies in World War II.
Negative: There wasn't much proof of conspiracies in World War II.
Interrogative: Was there much proof of conspiracies in World War II?

Complete the sentences:

B- Complete this conversation with **there was, there were, there wasn't e there weren't**.

A – Hi Vic. How was your trip to the USA?

B – It was pretty nice Josh. But when I got to the hotel I was thirsty but t h e r e _ w e r e n ' t any bottle of water at the f

A – I don't believe it!! W a s _ t h e r e _ a red ing machine at the lobby?

B – Yes, t h e r e _ w a s . But t h e r e _ many people working at that day so t h e r e _ w a s _ anyone to fill the empty slots of the machine.

A – Well, it's a hotel so They need to have more people available to work. I'm sure t h e r e _ w e r e other people dealing with the same problem you had.

B – Yes, t h e r e _ w e r e many others complaining about the service and some of them were complaining because t h e r e _ w e r e n ' t all the items offered on their website.

C – Choose the right alternative for the sentences below:

1- _____ many people at the newstand to get the morning newspaper.

- a) There was b) There **c) There were**

2- _____ a group of _____ workers willing to go on strike due to low-wage jobs.

- a) There is b) There were **c) There was**

3- _____ alost dog wandering on the street for hours.

- a) Have **b) There was** c) There were

4- How many people _____ at the party?

- a) was there b) Had **c) were there**

5- _____ any food left in the fridge. We had to go grocery shopping.

- a) There weren't b) There had **c) There wasn't**

D – Now, tell us about things there were and there weren't at a hotel you stayed recently.

- 1) T h e r e _ w a s _ a _ h u g e _ l o b b y _
- 2) T h e r e _ w e r e n ' t _ a n y _ p o o l s _
- 3) T h e r e _ w a s _ a _ h a i r _ s a l o n _ i n _ s i d e _ t h e _ h o t e l _
- 4) T h e r e _ w e r e _ m a n y _ n i c e _ g u e s t s _
- 5) T h e r e _ w a s n ' t _ a _ s h u t t l e _ s e r v i c e _ t o _ t h e _ a i r p o r t _
- 6) T h e r e _ w e r e n ' t _ m o r e _ r o o m _ s _ a v a i l a b l e _
- 7) T h e r e _ w a s _ a _ 5 - s t a r _ r e s t a u r a n t _

Complete the sentences:

Read the statements below and circle the causative verbs presented.

1. My parents have their own company. You know, They sell all different kinds of bottled water. And they **want** me to get involved in that and be part of it. Like, my mom **wants** me to learn more about bottled water and everything. I'm not really into it but... mom says she'll teach me all about it when I finish college. She really **wants** me to work with her.
2. I'm an engineering student. School's good, but it's pretty difficult, you know? I mean, I have classes and then I work part-time too, so I never seem to have much time for anything else. My parents are always complaining because they don't see me very often. I mean, they **let** me to go home for every holiday, but they also **want** us to talk more on the phone, like once a week, too.
3. I really have to do some thinking about what I'm going to do with my life. You see, I want to see the world before I get a real job. I've never get the chance to go anywhere. But my parents always **let** me make my own decisions, like they didn't **make** me go to college or anything. The only thing they worry about is that I won't find someone and they won't have grandchildren, you know, that I'll never settle down and have children. They're always **telling** me to think about the future.
4. My parentes are trying to **get** me to go back to Toronto – they really **want** me to be closer to them. They're getting older, you know, and they don't **want** me to live so far away. When I visit them, They **have** me fix things around the house and help out. So yeah, it'd be good to be like an hour's drive from them or something. I told my mom I was thinking of moving, and she said, "Oh great. I'll **help** you find a nice apartment near here." And I said, "Mom, I don't mean I'm going to be your neighbor!".
5. I'm in a rock band, you know. I play the drums. We perform almost every weekend at clubs around town. It's fun! My parents are Ok with it.... After all, they paid for my music lessons When I was a kid, and made me practice, too! But they don't like how I look, I mean, my clothes, and long hair and everything. They just don't think I dress well, so they're Always trying to **let** me to change the way I look.

Answer the questions:

A – Translate the sentences below into affirmative, negative and interrogative forms.

1. Meus pais não permitem que eu fique fora até tarde.

Affirmative: My parents let me stay out until late.

Negative: My parents don't let me stay out until late.

Interrogative: Do my parents let me stay out until late?

2. Eles me fazem voltar para casa às 10h00.

Affirmative: They make me come back home at 10:00.

Negative: They don't make me come back home at 10:00.

Interrogative: Do they

3. Rebecca faz seus filhos limparem a casa todos os dias.

Affirmative: Rebecca makes her children clean the house every day.

Negative: Rebecca doesn't make her children clean the house every day.

Interrogative: Does Rebecca make her children clean the house every day?

4. Quero estudar direito, mas meus pais querem que eu faça engenharia.

Affirmative: My parents want me to study engineering.

Negative: My parents don't want me to study engineering.

Interrogative: Do my parents want me to study engineering?

5. Meu irmão não permite que eu fique com o controle remoto.

Affirmative: My brother lets me stay with the remote.

Negative: My brother doesn't let me stay with the remote.

Interrogative: Does my brother let me stay with the remote?

6. Minha esposa vive me pedindo para dirigir mais devagar.

Affirmative: My wife always asks me to drive slower.

Negative: My wife doesn't always ask me to drive slower.

Interrogative: Does my wife always

ask me to drive slower?

Affirmative: My mom could get me to eat the vegetables.

Negative: My mom couldn't get me to eat the vegetables.

Interrogative: Could my mom get me to eat the vegetables?

Respostas do INTERMEDIATE ENGLISH,
referente lição 09, PG 33

Complete the sentences:

B- Choose the correct verbs to complete the sentences.

1. When I was a young boy, my brothers _____ me walk downtown by myself. (**got** / **let**)
2. My mom always made me _____ to bed early. (**go** / **to go**)
3. My mother couldn't _____ me to eat vegetables. I was a picky eater! (**make** / **get**)
4. My cousin never lets me _____ his cell phone. (**use** / **to use**)
5. My parents _____ me to spend more time with them. (**want** / **have**)

Lição 09, PG 33

Answer the questions:

D – Complete the sentences with your own information:

- 1) My boss wants me to _____
talk to the clients tomorrow.
- 2) My wife often asks me _____
wash the dishes on weekends.
- 3) The teacher sometimes has us _____
clean the mess in the classroom.
- 4) I always tell my sister _____
be careful when she's driving.
- 5) I don't get my relatives _____
buy me gifts on Christmas.
- 6) Grandparents should let their grandchildren _____
play around the house.
- 7) My neighbors sometimes help me _____
with my homework.
- 8) I can't get my co-workers _____
cooperate with one another.
- 9) My children always have me _____
take them to their friends' houses.
- 10) I'm Always telling my friends _____
keep in contact.

Answer the questions:

1- What was Bob working as?

Bob was working as a cop

2- What was the request from his coworkers?

His coworkers were asking him to have the reports done for the cases that they had.

3- Which cases of robbery were increasing in the city?

The police chief was planning to bring more cops to the Police Department.

5- Are there many candidates for the recruitment?

Yes, there are.

6- Are there any tests to be applied for the position?

Yes, there are two tests to be applied.

Lição 10, PG 34

Answer the questions:

B- Write down at least 4 sentences from the text which present causative verbs:

1- His coworkers were *asking* him to *have* the reports done for

2- Bob was getting worried about that, so he proposed hiring mo

He *got* Bob to solve the problem, so now there is a selection process for the recruitment and

3- there are many candidates already.

4- There's also a fee that they *have* candidates pay to participate

Respostas do INTERMEDIATE ENGLISH,
referente lição 11, PG 37

Complete the sentences:

A – Complete the sentences with the correct quantifiers:

1- I don't have _____ money to buy that house. I have only half of it.
a) much b) many c) a few **d) enough**

2- She has _____ pair of shoes in her closet. Now she wants to give some away.
a) a little b) much c) enough **d) many**

3- David is buying _____ milk for the cats and he shouldn't.
a) much b) a little c) many d) few

4- I only have _____ time to spend with my family on the weekends
a) a lot of b) few **c) little** d) much

5- Is there _____ unemployment in your city?
a) much b) some c) a few d) many

Lição 11, PG 37

Complete the sentences:

Few years ago, I went to a county in the state of New Hampshire and I noticed that very people were wearing heavy clothes in the winter. **There was** _____ snow all over the place and **most** _____ people didn't feel the cold. I was astonished by it. So, I went to a clothing store to **buy** _____ extra clothes and I saw a small kid looking at the jackets, but seeming to have **little** _____ money. I got close to him and I asked if he **had** _____ money to buy a jacket and he sadly said he didn't. Well, I **had** _____ money to buy my clothes and also his. Then, I bought him a jacket and I asked him to choose **a few** _____ pairs of socks. He was so happy at that moment.

Answer the questions:

C- Translate the sentences below:

1 - Não tem muito leite na geladeira.
There isn't much milk in the fridge.

2 - Às vezes bebo pouca água porque não tenho tempo de parar.
Sometimes I drink little water because I don't have time to stop.

3 - Temos um pouco de tempo sobrando. Vamos tomar um café.
We have a little time to spare. Let's have a coffee.

4 - Você ainda tem algumas coisas para fazer, deve trabalhar hora extra.
You still have some things to do. You'll have to work overtime.

5 - Muitas pessoas estão trabalhando de casa este ano.
Many people are working from home this year.

6 - Poucos trabalhadores estão indo para o escritório para trabalhar.
Few workers are going to the office to work.

7 - Há muitas frutas na fruteira. Leve algumas para a escola.
There are many fruits in the fruit bowl. Take some to school.

8 - Quanto dinheiro você precisa para viajar pelo mundo?
How much money do you need to travel the world?

9 - Quantas cidades há em seu estado?
How many cities are there in your state?

10 - Eu preciso de um pouco de descanso.
I need a little rest.

Answer the questions:

A – Rewrite the sentences using the simple future auxiliary “will”.

1- Susie goes to the movies on Sunday.

Susie will go to the movies on Sunday.

2- They work every Friday from now on.

They will work every Friday from now on.

3- Peter buys a house for his mom and dad.

Peter will buy a house for his mom and dad.

4- I lend some money to my siblings.

I will lend some money to my siblings.

5- She uses her husband's car to go to work.

She will use her husband's car to go to work.

B- Correct the mistakes in the sentences below:

1-Jeff will travels to the USA with his family.

Jeff will travel to the USA with his family.

2-Do you will work for this company next year?

Will you work for this company next year?

3-We wills buy a new car because ours is getting old.

4-We are going to travel to Europe.

5-We are going to buy a new car because the old one is getting old.

According to the weather forecast, it will rain tomorrow.

Respostas do INTERMEDIATE ENGLISH,
referente lição 12, PG 42

Answer the questions:

1- Buscarei minhas filhas no colégio depois do trabalho.

I'll pick up my daughters at school after work.

2- Irei ao supermercado para comprar mantimentos e comprar uma nova mesa.

I will go to the supermarket to buy groceries and buy a new table.

3- Viajarei para Paris no ano que vem.

I'll travel to Paris next year.

4- Você ajudará sua mãe com os serviços de casa este final de semana?

Will you help your mother with the chores this weekend?

5- No próximo ano eu vou me formar e depois vou fazer uma grande festa.

In the next year I'll graduate and then throw a big party.

6 - A lgumas pessoas irão trabalhar na obra aos domingos.

Some people will work at the construction on Sundays.

7-Ela vai visitar sua irmã no Reino Unido.

She will visit your sister in the UK.

8- A vacina vai salvar toda a população mundial?

Will the vaccine save the entire world population?

9- Se você não for devagar, você causará um acidente.

If you don't go slower, you will cause an accident.

10- Dormirei cedo hoje, pois tenho que acordar cedo para estudar para a prova

I'll go to sleep early today because I have to wake up early to study for the test.

E – Change the sentences into the negative and interrogative forms:

1. I will work out at the gym.

Neg: I w o n ' t w o r k o u t a t t h e g y m .

Int: Will I work out at the gym?

2-The president will give a speech at the White House Conference Center.

Neg: T h e p r e s i d e n t w o n ' t g i v e a s p e e c h a t t h e W h i t e H o u s e C o n f e r e n c e C e n t e r .

Int: W i l l t h e p r e s i d e n t g i v e a s p e e c h a t t h e W h i t e H o u s e C o n f e r e n c e C e n t e r ?

3- I'll be at the office tomorrow morning.

Neg: I w o n ' t b e a t t h e o f f i c e t o m o r r o w m o r n i n g .

Int: W i l l I b e a t t h e o f f i c e t o m o r r o w m o r n i n g ?

Answer the questions:

Reading comprehension:

Daisy is a very busy woman. Tomorrow she is going to wake up very early because she has a doctor's appointment at 07 o'clock. After the appointment, she is going to run to her office to schedule some meetings with her customers. She is also going to try to close a very profitable deal with a company she has been dealing with for a while. At noon, she is going to pick up her children at school and take them home to have lunch. Then, she is going to go back to her office to make some phone calls and prepare everything for the next day. After work, she is going to take her kids to an amusement park settled near her house, and she promised them that she is going together on the rides; They are definitely going to have a lot of fun!

Answer the questions according to the text above. Give full answers.

1- Where is Daisy going to go very early in the morning?

Daisy is going to go to the doctor.

2- What is she going to do in her office right after she gets there?

She is going to try to close a very profitable deal with a company she has been dealing with for a while.

3- What time is she going to pick her kids up?

4- She is going to go back to her office to make some phone calls and prepare everything for the next day.

5- Where is she going to take her kids after work?

She is going to take her children to an amusement park settled near her house.

Answer the questions:

A – Rewrite the sentences in the simple future using the expression 'going to'.

1 - Susie goes to the movies on Sunday.

2 - ~~Thuesday~~ ~~is~~ ~~going~~ ~~to~~ ~~work~~ ~~every~~ ~~Friday~~ ~~from~~ ~~now~~ ~~on~~. ~~Sunday~~.

~~They are going to work every Friday from now on.~~
3 - Peter buys a house for his mom and dad.

4 - ~~He is~~ ~~going to~~ ~~lend~~ ~~some~~ ~~money~~ ~~to~~ ~~his~~ ~~siblings~~.

5 - She uses her husband's car to go to work.

~~She is going to use her husband's car to go to work.~~

Lição 13, PG 45

Answer the questions:

B- Correct the mistakes in the sentences below:

1- Jeff are going to travel to the USA with his family.

~~Jeff is going to travel to the USA with his family.~~

2- ~~ADroe~~ ~~yyouu~~ ~~agroe~~ ~~i~~ ~~nggo~~ ~~itnog~~ ~~w~~ ~~too~~ ~~rwk~~ ~~oforkr~~ ~~t~~ ~~hchois~~ ~~m~~ ~~cpoamnp~~ ~~ya~~ ~~nneyx~~ ~~nt~~ ~~eyxeta~~ ~~yr?~~ear?

3- We is going to buy a new car because ours is getting old.

~~We are going to buy a new car because ours is getting old.~~

4- Jane and Mary will going to sell all the crop of this season to Europe?

~~Are Jane and Mary going to sell all the crop of this season to Europe?~~

5 -According to the weather forecast, it's going rains tomorrow.

~~According to the weather forecast, it's going to rain tomorrow.~~

Answer the questions:

1 - Quero morar nos EUA no próximo ano.

Neg: I don't want to live in the USA next year.

Int: I want to live in the USA next year?

2 - Ele quer viajar para o exterior nas férias.

Neg: He doesn't want to travel abroad on vacation

Int: Does he want to travel abroad on vacation?

3 - Você sabe cozinhar o jantar.

Neg: You don't know how to cook dinner.

Int: Do you know how to cook dinner?

4 - Eles precisam trabalhar hora extra.

Neg: They don't have to work overtime.

Int: Do they need to work overtime?

5 - Amamos cozinhar macarrão para as crianças.

Neg: We don't love cooking pasta for kids.

Int: Do we love to cook pasta for kids?

6 - Elas querem cozinhar uma nova receita para meus familiares.

Neg: They don't want to cook a new recipe for my family members.

Int: Do they want to cook a new recipe for my family members?

7 - Meu filho sabe cozinhar arroz, feijão, macarrão e sopa.

Neg: My son doesn't know how to cook rice, beans, pasta, and soup.

Int: Does my son know how to cook rice, beans, pasta, and soup?

8 - Eu adoro passear no parque nos finais de semana.

Neg: I don't love hanging out in the park on weekends.

Int: Do I love walking in the park on weekends?

9 - Precisamos ir ao banco para sacar mais dinheiro.

Neg: We don't need to go to the bank to withdraw more money.

Int: Do we need to go to the bank to withdraw more money?

Respostas do INTERMEDIATE ENGLISH,
referente lição 13, PG 46

D- Translate the sentences below using the expression BE GOING TO:

1 - Buscarei minhas filhas no colégio depois do trabalho.

I am going to pick up my daughters at school after work.

2 - Irei ao supermercado para comprar mantimentos e comprar uma nova mesa.

I am going to go to the supermarket to buy groceries and buy a new table.

3 - Viajarei para Paris no ano que vem.

I am going to travel to Paris next year

4 - Você ajudará sua mãe com os serviços de casa este final de semana?

Are you going to help your mother with the chores this weekend?

5 - No próximo ano eu vou me formar e depois vou fazer uma grande festa.

In the next year I am going to graduate and then throw a big party.

6 - Algumas pessoas irão trabalhar na obra aos domingos.

Some people are going to work at the construction on Sundays.

7 - Ela vai visitar sua irmã no Reino Unido.

She is going to visit your sister in the UK.

8 - A vacina vai salvar toda a população mundial?

Is the vaccine going to save the entire world population?

9 - Se você não for mais devagar, você causará um acidente.

If you don't go slower, you are going to cause an accident.

10 - Dormirei cedo hoje, pois tenho que acordar cedo para estudar para a prova.

I am going to go to sleep early today because I have to wake up early to study for the test.

E – Change the sentences into the negative and interrogative forms:

I'm going to work out at the gym.

Neg: I'm not going to work out at the gym.

Int: Am I going to work out at the gym?

The president is going to give a speech at the White House Conference Center.

Neg: The president isn't going to give a speech at the White House Conference Center.

Int: Is the president going to give a speech at the White House Conference Center?

3- I'm going to be at the office tomorrow morning.

Neg: I am not going to be at the office tomorrow morning.

Int: Am I going to be at the office tomorrow morning?

Answer the questions:

1- What do you think you'll be doing at this time next year?

I think I'll be speaking English fluently.

2- Do you think you'll be living in the same house in twenty Years' time?

No. I think I won't be living in Brazil in twenty years' time.

3- ~~What will be doing at this time next year?~~

4- Do you think we will be eating the same kind of food twenty years from now?

Yes. We will be eating the same kind of food twenty years from now.

I guess I will be living in the same house in twenty years' time.

I'll be working in the same company in twenty years' time.

I won't be living in the same house in twenty years' time.

I'll be meeting with my boss and colleagues.

Answer the questions:

1- Estarei buscando minhas filhas no colégio depois do trabalho.

I'll be picking my daughters up at school after work.

2 - Estarei indo ao supermercado para comprar mantimentos e comprar uma nova mesa.

I'll be going to the supermarket to buy groceries and buy a new table.

3 - Estarei viajando para Paris no ano que vem.

I'll be traveling to Paris next year.

4 - Você estará ajudando sua mãe com os serviços de casa este final de semana?

Will you be helping your mother with the chores this weekend?

5 - No próximo ano eu estarei me formando e depois vou fazer uma grande festa.

In the next year I'll be graduating and then I'll throw a big party.

6 - Algumas pessoas não estarão trabalhando no próximo feriado.

Some people won't be working on the next holiday.

7 - Ela estará visitando sua irmã no Reino Unido.

She will be visiting your sister in the UK.

8 - O governo estará vacinando todas as pessoas até o próximo mês?

Will the government be vaccinating everyone by the next month?

9 - Você não receberá um aumento até o próximo ano.

You won't be getting a raise until the next year.

10 - Estarei dormindo mais cedo hoje, pois tenho que acordar cedo para estudar para a prova.

I'll be sleeping earlier today because I have to wake up early to study for the test.

B – Change the sentences into the negative and interrogative forms:

1 I'll be working out at the gym.

Neg: **I won't be working out at the gym.**

Int: **Will I be working out at the gym?**

2 The president will be giving a speech at the White House Conference Center.

Neg: **The president won't be giving a speech at the White House Conference Center.**

Int: **Will the president be giving a speech at the White House Conference Center?**

3 I will be driving to the office tomorrow morning.

Neg: **I won't be driving to the office tomorrow morning.**

Int: **Will I be driving to the office tomorrow morning?**

Answer the questions:

A- Complete the sentences with the correct quantifiers:

- 1- Jason has _____ friends abroad.
a) much b) little **c) many**
- 2- I don't drink _____ water when I'm working.
a) many b) few **c) much**
- 3- There are _____ people unemployed due to the pandemic.
a) a little b) much **c) a lot of**
- 4- I don't have _____ money to buy this car.
a) lot of **b) enough** c) few
- 5- Only _____ students showed up for the class today.
a) a little b) a few c) many
- 6- We have to postpone the meeting, only _____ workers came.
a) few b) little c) many

B- Complete the sentences with 'how much' or 'how many':

- 1- How much cheese do we have in the fridge?
- 2- How much jelly do you usually put on your bread?
- 3- How many slices of pizza can you eat?
- 4- How much money do you have in your savings account?
- 5- How many dollars do you need to travel to the USA?
- 6- How many students are there in your class?
- 7- How much time do you need to accomplish this task?
- 8- How much water do you drink every day?
- 9- How many bottles of water do you usually buy a week?
- 10- How many siblings do you have?

C- Translate the sentences below:

1. Tenho poucos livros na estante. Preciso comprar mais.
I have few books on the shelf. I need to buy more
2. Não tenho muito tempo para ir ao shopping.
I don't have much time to go to the mall.
3. Quantas pessoas foram infectadas com o vírus no Brasil?
How many people were infected with the virus in Brazil?
4. Tem muitos carros estacionados aqui, não consigo contar.
There are many cars parked here, I can't count them.
5. Quanto tempo falta para acabar a prova?
How much time is left to finish the test?

Answer the questions:

D- Write the sentences below with the simple future tense using the verbs in parentheses:

- 1 - I **will go / am going to go** to the movies with my family. (to go)
- 2 - She **will work / is going to work** at the office on the holiday. (to work)
- 3 - We **will go / are going to go** grocery shopping. The fridge is empty. (to go)
- 4 - **Will you give / Are you going to give** them a ride to work? (to give)
- 5 - We **will have / are going to have** to go to the bank to withdraw some money. (to have)
- 6 - It **will rain / is going to rain** all day long tomorrow. (to rain)
- 7 - He **will finish / is going to finish** the test before everybody else. (to finish)
- 8 - **Will they be / Are they going to be** home on the weekend? (to be)
- 9 - She **will have / is going to have** a nice birthday party. (to have)
- 10 - You **will help / am going to help** your homework before going to bed. (to finish)

E - Unscramble the sentences below:

- 1 - The / next month / you / going to / museum / are / visit / ?

Are you going to visit the museum next month?

- 2 - To / am / dentist / the / I / this / going / visit / afternoon / .

I am going to visit the dentist this afternoon.

- 3 - Tomorrow / going to / with / aren't / they / friends / swim / their / .

They aren't going to swim with their friends tomorrow.

- 4 - Buy / going to / you / a nice jacket / are / .

You are going to buy a nice jacket.

- 5 - Our house / going to / we / paint / are / this week / ?

Are we going to paint our house this week?

F- Translate the sentences below:

1. Estarei indo para a Europa no ano que vem.

I'll be going to Europe next year.

2. Ele não estará mais trabalhando conosco a partir de amanhã.

He won't be working with us starting tomorrow.

3. Eles estarão participando de uma reunião a esta hora em dois dias.

They will be participating in a meeting at this time in two days.

4. Nós estaremos entregando todos os relatórios à noite.

We will be delivering all the reports at night.

5. Eu estarei dormindo quando eles chegarem.

I'll be sleeping when they arrive.

Answer the questions:

A- Translate the conditional sentences below using the modal verb 'WOULD'.

1- Nós cantaríamos na festa de despedida dele.

We would sing at his going away party.

2- Eu ouviria esta música todos os dias.

I would listen to this song every day.

3- Peter estaria preocupado com alguma coisa.

Peter would be worried about something.

4- Quem seria a pessoa para me ajudar?

Who would be the one to help me?

5- Quem o chefe escolheria para fazer a viagem ao exterior?

Who would the boss choose to take the trip to abroad?

6- Algumas pessoas não fariam isso porque isso não é legal.

Some people wouldn't do this because this isn't cool.

7- Nós não compraríamos esta casa nem por um dólar.

We wouldn't buy this house, not even for a dollar.

8- O time não venceria o campeonato.

The team wouldn't win the championship.

9- O que você faria para conseguir o emprego dos sonhos?

What would you do to get the dream job?

10- Elas leriam todos os livros para aprender mais.

They would read all the books to learn more.

B – Change the sentences into the negative and interrogative forms:

1- They would shop for hours at that mall.

Neg: **They wouldn't shop for hours at that mall.**

Int: **Would they shop for hours at that mall?**

2- I would make a nice drawing of the Mona Lisa.

Neg: **I wouldn't make a nice drawing of the Mona Lisa.**

Int: **Would I make a nice drawing of the Mona Lisa?**

3- The dog would bite you if you got inside.

Neg: **The dog wouldn't bite you if you got inside.**

Int: **Would the dog bite you if you got inside?**

Answer the questions:

C- Change the sentences below to include the modal verb 'would':

1- She loves to go swimming on the weekends

She would love to go swimming on the weekends.

2 - He doesn't drive home fast every night after work.

He wouldn't drive home fast every night after work.

3 - We study English and French at university.

We would study English and French at university.

4 - You help your mom run all errands after school.

You would help your mom run all errands after school.

5 - Do you go to the movies with your family?

Would you go to the movies with your family?

6 - Does he play soccer in his free time?

Would he play soccer in his free time?

7 - What do you like to do on Fridays and Saturdays?

What would you like to do on Fridays and Saturdays?

8 - He never hurts his pets because he loves them.

He would never hurt his pets because he loves them.

9 - The children love to play on the street.

The children would love to play on the street.

10 - I take my kids to work once in a while

I would take my children to work once in a while

Answer the questions:

A- Translate the sentences below using 'can' or 'could':

1- Eu consigo pular 10 metros.

I can jump 10 meters.

2- Ele sabe contar até 100 em japonês.

He can count to 100 in Japanese.

3- Ela sabe pilotar um avião muito bem.

She can pilot a plane very well.

4- O que você poderia fazer para ajudar seus pais em casa?

What could you do to help your parents at home?

5- Eles conseguem chegar mais cedo todos os dias?

Can they arrive earlier every day?

6- Nós conseguíamos desenhar quando estávamos no jardim de infância.

We could draw when we were in kindergarten.

7- Como posso te ajudar?

How can I help you?

8- Você pode me ajudar?

Can you help me?

9- Você poderia nos ajudar?

Could you help us?

10- Elas conseguem ler dois livros em um único dia

They can read two books in a single day.

11- Eu não consigo fazer o meu dever de casa sozinho.

I can't do my homework by myself

12- Os trabalhadores conseguem trabalhar neste domingo?

Can the workers work this Sunday?

13- Ele não conseguiu entregar os relatórios antes do prazo.

He couldn't deliver the reports before the deadline.

14- Eu não consigo autorizar este empréstimo sem os documentos.

I can't authorize this loan without the documents

15- Eles conseguem correr bem rápido.

They can run really fast.

16- Você não sabe andar de bicicleta?

Can't you ride a bike?

17- Eles sabem lidar com a tecnologia muito bem.

They can deal with technology really well.

Answer the questions:

B- Correct the mistakes in the sentences below:

1. She can rides a motorcycle.

She can ride a motorcycle.

2. He doesn't can take care of his nephews.

He can't take care of his nephews.

3. We could to study English and French with your help.

We could study English and French with your help.

4. You to could prepare the exams to apply tomorrow.

You could prepare the exams to apply tomorrow

5- Do you can to cook dinner tonight?

Can you cook dinner tonight?

6- Can I to help you?

Can I help you?

7- What does can he do for the country?

What can he do for the country?

8- How could you does this to me?

How could you do this to me?

9- The children cannot to play on the street.

The children cannot play on the street.

10- Do you can hold a minute, please?

Can you hold on a minute, please?

Answer the questions:

A- Translate the sentences below using MAY or MIGHT:

1- Vejo algumas nuvens, deve chover à noite.

I see a few clouds, it may rain at night.

2- Vejo poucas nuvens, pode ser que chova à noite.

I see few clouds, it might rain at night.

3- Ela deve querer tirar um cochilo, ela parece cansada.

She may want to take a nap, she looks tired.*

4- Pode ser que as crianças assistam TV hoje depois do jantar.

The kids might watch TV today after dinner.*

5- Posso me sentar aqui?

May I sit here?*

6- Nós não devemos usar o telefone em sala de aula.

We may not use the phone in the classroom.

7- Como posso te ajudar?

How may I help you?

8- Que todos os seus sonhos se tornem realidade.

May all your dreams come true.

9- Essa prateleira pode cair com tanto peso.

This shelf may fall with that much weight.*

10- Pode ser que eles se machuquem com essa brincadeira.

They might hurt themselves with this prank.*

11- The people may be in a tie.

12- Os funcionários podem deixar seus pertences aqui?

May the employees leave their belongings here?*

13- I can use your car at any time.

14- Posso usar seu carro para ir ao supermercado?

May I use your car to go to the supermarket?*

15- Estou quebrado. Você pode me emprestar algum dinheiro?

I'm broke. May you lend me some money?*

16- Pode ser que a gasolina do carro acabe se você acelerar demais.

The car may run out of gas if you speed too much.*

17- Em que posso te ajudar?

In what may I help you?

Answer the questions:

B- Correct the mistakes in the sentences below:

1- She mayn't go to the movies with her boyfriend.

She may not go to the movies with her boyfriend.

2- He doesn't might be able to take care of his nephews.

He might not be able to take care of his nephews

3- We may leave the room as we finished the test?

May we leave the room as we finished the test?

4- You might to take the test tomorrow with the others.

You might take the test tomorrow with the others.

5- Do I may to cook dinner tonight?

May I cook dinner tonight?

6- He may do some grocery shopping as well.

He may do some grocery shopping as well.

7- How much do I may help you?

How much may I help you?

8- It might take a long time go get there.

It might take a long time to get there.

9- You don't might do that. Shame on you!

You may not do that. Shame on you!

10- The cats may wrack the toys. Don't let it happen.

The cats may wreck the toys. Don't let it happen.

Answer the questions:

A- Translate the sentences below using **SHOULD** and **MUST**.

1- Você deveria praticar inglês por aproximadamente 1h por dia.

Y o u _ s h o u l d _ p r a c t i c e _ E n g l i s h _ f o r _ a p p r o x i m a t e l y _ 1 _ h o u r _ a _ d a y _ .

2- Nós deveríamos ficar em casa esse final de semana.

We should stay home this weekend.

3- Ele deve participar do evento anual para aprender mais.

H e _ m _ u s t _ p a r t i c i p a t e _ i n _ t h e _ y e a r l y _ e v e n t _ t o _ l e a r n _ m o r e _ .

4- Ela deve fazer as ligações que a chefe pediu?

Must she make the calls her boss asked for?

5- Eu devo contar o segredo para ela?

S h o u l d _ I _ t e l l _ h e r _ t h e _ s e c r e t _ ? _ *

6- Vocês deveriam caminhar no parque todos os dias.

Y o u _ s h o u l d _ w a l k _ i n _ t h e _ p a r k _ e v e r y _ d a y _ .

7- O que eu deveria fazer para aprender um novo idioma rapidamente?

W h a t _ s h o u l d _ I _ d o _ t o _ l e a r n _ a _ n e w _ l a n g u a g e _ f a s t _ ?

8- Você deve estudar diariamente e praticar pelo menos 1h ao dia.

Y o u _ m u s t _ s t u d y _ d a i l y _ a n d _ p r a c t i c e _ f o r _ a t _ l e a s t _ 1 _ h o u r _ a _ d a y _ . *

9- Eu deveria aprender uma nova profissão para estar preparado para o mercado de trabalho.

I _ s h o u l d _ l e a r n _ a _ n e w _ j o b _ t o _ b e _ p r e p a r e d _ f o r _ t h e _ l a b o r _ m a r k e t _ .

10- Vocês não devem brincar com isso, é perigoso.

You mustn't play with this, it's dangerous.*

11- Ele não deveria entrar na sala sem pedir permissão.

H e _ s h o u l d n ' t _ e n t e r _ t h e _ r o o m _ w i t h o u t _ a s k i n g _ f o r _ p e r m i s s i o n _ .

12- Os relatórios devem ser entregues até amanhã ao meio dia.

T h e _ r e p o r t s _ m u s t _ b e _ d e l i v e r e d _ b y _ t o m o r r o w _ a t _ n o o n _ . *

13- Nós deveríamos viajar para a Flórida nas férias.

We should travel to Florida on vacation.

Respostas do INTERMEDIATE ENGLISH,
referente lição 20, PG 68

A- Write sentences using the information given and the modal verbs in parentheses!

1- my children / not read or write / yet / . (can)

My children cannot read or write yet.

2- cell phone / lend me / you / your / ? (could)

Could you lend me your cell phone?

3- people / stay home / while / in quarantine / . (should)

People should stay home while in quarantine.

4- not put / inside / cage / your hands / you / . (must)

You must not put your hands inside the cage.

5- clouds / there are / some / it / rain / in the sky / . / . (might)

There are some clouds in the sky. It might rain. / It might rain. There are some clouds in the sky.

6- very hot / be / in Florida / in August / it / . (can)

It can be very hot in August in Florida. / It can be very hot in Florida in August.

7- mad / with the rules / get / people / . (may)

People may get mad with the rules.

8- travel / by car / the world / I / around / . (would)

I would travel around the world by car.

9- do / in this / what / he / situation / ? (would)

What would he do in this situation?

10- learn / before / English / the end of the year / we / . (must)

We must learn English before the end of the year.

B- Translate the sentences below:

1- Devemos usar uniforme na escola, é obrigatório.

We must wear a uniform at school, it's mandatory.

2- Eu trabalharia até mais tarde, sem problema.

I would work until later, no problem.

3- Ele sabe andar de cavalo muito bem.

He can ride a horse really well.

4- Ela não consegue responder todas as questões da prova.

She can't answer all of the questions in the test.

5- Está ensolarado, mas pode chover mais tarde.

It's sunny, but it (might/may) rain later.

6- Vocês devem estar muito cansados da viagem. Vocês deveriam descansar.

You (must/may/might) be very tired from the trip. You should rest.

7- Os bandidos podem ser sentenciados a 10 anos na prisão por roubarem o banco.

The robbers (can/may/might) be sentenced to ten years in prison for robbing the bank.

8- Isso não deveria estar aqui. Coloque no lugar certo.

This shouldn't be here. Put it in the right place.

9- O que você faria para conseguir um aumento?

What would you do to get a raise?

Answer the questions:

1- I like to read books at night.

Me too / So do I.

2- I don't like to watch TV.

I don't either. / Neither do I.

3- I didn't study for my English test.

I didn't either. / Neither did I.

4- I'll write an e-mail to my cousins.

Me too. / So will I.

5- I should be more kind to people.

Me too. / So should I.

6- I can draw a portrait of the Mona Lisa.

Me too. / So can I.

7- I can't imagine how far it is.

I can't either. / Neither can I.

8- I shouldn't apply for the position.

I shouldn't either. / Neither should I.

9- I must call my parents more often.

Me too. / So must I.

10- I mustn't let them do whatever they want.

I mustn't either. / Neither must I.

11- My neighbor is going to go on a cruise.

Me too. / So am I.

12- My brother is studying law in Boston.

Me too. / So am I.

13- My father loves to watch games on Sundays.

Me too. / So do I.

14- I don't want to take the bus.

I don't either. / Neither do I.

15- I'm not happy about the current situation in our country.

I'm not either. / Neither am I.

16- I shouldn't pay attention to bad news.

I shouldn't either. / Neither should I.

17- I will learn English fast at Aliança.

Me too. / So will I.

Complete the sentences:

1- Cathy doesn't like dogs.

a) **I don't either.** b) Neither am I! c) I am not either! d) And I am neither!

2. I don't go to work every day.

a) **Neither do I.** b) Do I either. c) Neither am I. d) I am not either.

3. Paul can't type well.

a) I will either. b) Neither could I. c) I could either. **d) I can't either**

4. I don't need to go to work.

a) I don't work either. b) Neither need I. c) I wasn't either. **I don't either.**

5. He doesn't need to study.

a) I don't need either. **Neither do I.** c) I should either. d) Neither need I.

6. She doesn't wish to stop smoking.

a) I wasn't either. b) Neither am I. c) Neither wish I. **either do I.**

7. Vanessa couldn't go.

a) I wouldn't either. b) I shouldn't either. c) I could either. **I) Neither could I.**

8. Mary shouldn't do her homework now.

a) I am not either. **I shouldn't either.** c) Shouldn't I either. d) Neither do I.

Answer the questions:

1- Preciso ir para qualquer lugar quieto para relaxar.

I need to go anywhere quiet to relax.

2- Eles precisam de algumas ferramentas para consertar o carro.

They need some tools to fix the car.

3- Não preciso de ninguém para me dizer o que preciso fazer.

I don't need anyone to tell me what I need to do.

4- Você conhece algum ferreiro bom neste bairro?

Do you know any good blacksmiths in this neighborhood?

5- Eles gostariam de tomar um pouco de chá?

Would they like to drink some tea?

6- Nós temos alguns bons livros para ler.

We have some good books to read.

7- Não está passando nenhum programa interessante na TV.

There aren't any interesting programs on TV.

8- Tem algum queijo na geladeira?

Is there any cheese in the fridge?

9- Alguns alunos participarão dos jogos de verão.

Some students will participate in the summer games.

10- Nenhum estudante participará das olimpíadas este ano devido à pandemia.

No students will participate in the olympics this year due to the pandemic.

11- Ninguém apareceu para receber o grande prêmio.

No one showed up to receive the grand prize.

12- Você tem algum tempo livre esta semana?

Do you have some free time this week?

13- Nenhum desses jogos deve ser jogado por crianças.

None of these games should be played by children.

14- Como que ninguém percebeu isso?

How did no one notice this?

15- Vocês gostariam de comer alguma sobremesa?

Would you like to eat some dessert?

16- Eles querem algum tipo de tratamento especial?

Do they want some kind of special treatment?

17- Você está procurando por alguém?

Are you looking for someone?

Complete the sentences:

B- Complete the sentences with **SOME**, **ANY** or **NO**:

- 1- I don't need any money because I'm going to bring my lunch to school.
- 2- He has no pencils, but I have some to lend to him.
- 3- Our teacher didn't apply any test last month.
- 4- I'm tired. Do we have some time to take a nap?
- 5- Do they have any museums in town? No, they don't have any.
- 6- Paul wants to buy some new shoes.
- 7- Excuse me, I need some information about the flight to Boston.
- 8- I don't have any paper, but Mary has some.
- 9- Mr. Smith has some questions that he wants to ask you. You should talk.
- 10- They have some apples, but they have no bananas. So they'll have to bake an apple pie.
- 11- I'm sorry, but we don't have any more tickets.
- 12- Thomas read some interesting books last month. He learned a lot.
- 13- I bought some milk and some sugar at the supermarket.
- 14- A: Do you have any coins for the bus? B: No, I have no coins.
- 15- I need some help with my homework. This subject is very difficult.

C- Complete the sentences with **SOME**, **ANY**, **NO** and the compound indefinite pronouns:

- 1- Max, do we have something (or anything) to eat? – Of course, I bought some food yesterday.
- 2- There's somebody (or someone) at the door. Are you expecting someone (or anyone)?
- 3- Did you go somewhere (or anywhere) last night?
- 4- You have to do something about it. Otherwise, the situation will get out of control.
- 5- Choose anything from this store. It doesn't matter what, I'll buy it.
- 6- I can't find my cell phone. I think I left it somewhere.
- 7- I have something to do today, but tomorrow I have nowhere to go. Let's hang out tomorrow then.
- 8- This party is so boring. Let's go somewhere (or anywhere) else.
- 9- Is there anything you need? – No, I'm just looking for something.
- 10- Is there someone (or anyone) in the classroom without uniform?
- 11- John lives somewhere in Canada, but I don't really know the exact town.
- 12- Does anyone in the audience have a mobile phone?
- 13- Could I have something to drink, please?
- 14- I would like to go somewhere this summer, but not just anywhere I'd like to travel abroad.
- 15- Anyone can play this game. It's easy.
- 16- I went shopping yesterday. I bought something for you, but I didn't buy anything for me.

Answer the questions:

A- Translate the sentences below using the expressions learned:

1- Preciso fazer um acordo com os clientes antes do meu concorrente.

I need to make a deal with the customers before my competitor does.

2- Não estou me sentindo bem. Vou marcar uma consulta com o médico.

I'm not feeling well. I'll make an appointment with the doctor.

3- Há muitos preparos a serem feitos para o casamento.

There are many preparations to be made for the wedding.

4- Assim que vocês se levantarem, arrumem a cama.

As soon as you get up, make the bed.

5- Os vizinhos estão fazendo muito barulho.

The neighbors are making a lot of noise.

6- Lavei toda roupa ontem e hoje já tem um monte novamente.

I did all the laundry yesterday and today there's a lot again.

7- Você sempre se sai bem nas provas?

Do you always do well in exams?

8- Vocês não devem criar confusão na escola, não é legal.

You shouldn't make trouble at school, it's not cool.

9- Quantas ligações você fez no mês passado? A conta de telefone veio muito alta.

How many calls did you make last month? The phone bill came too high.

10- A prefeitura divulgou na última semana os dados da última reunião.

Last week, the city government made the last meeting's data public.

11- Sinta-se em casa aqui. Você é da família.

Make yourself at home here. You are family.

12- Tenho muitos pagamentos para fazer este mês.

I have many payments to make this month.

13- Quando for aos Estados Unidos, aproveite o máximo que puder.

When you go to the United States, make the most of it.

14- Um médico não pode cometer erros na mesa de cirurgia.

A doctor cannot make mistakes on the operating table.

15- Eles precisam fazer um esforço para aprender um novo idioma.

They need to make an effort to learn a new language.

16- Você pode me fazer um favor? Preciso de uma carona até o mercado.

Can you do me a favor? I need a ride to the market.

17- Quando for explicar algo, deixe claro o que deseja mencionar.

When explaining something, make what you want to mention clear.

Complete the sentences:

B- Complete the sentences with make or do in their correct form:

- 1- ~~D~~o good to others and they will ~~good~~ do to you.
- 2- He always ~~makes~~ much a fuss when I ~~a m~~isake .
- 3- He refused to ~~do~~ me a favor.
- 4- He tried to ~~make~~ fun of me but only ~~a fool~~ of ~~d~~himself.
- 5- I have a lot to ~~do~~ today.
- 6- I want you to ~~m~~ake a table.
- 7- I'm trying to ~~do~~ my homework.
- 8- Let's ~~make~~ a fire in the sitting room.
- 9- Now that we're here we must ~~make~~ the most of it.
- 10- Should I ~~make~~ a cup of tea?
- 11- That will ~~d~~o. You have eaten enough cake.
- 12- The attendant ~~did~~(or ~~do~~ as) do t of harm ~~by~~ ~~storm~~ies. ~~k~~ing
- 13- The businessman thinks he will ~~ma~~ake fo rtune in America.
- 14- The mechanic must ~~make~~ the car work.
- 15- What do you ~~d~~o for a living?
- 16- What should I ~~d~~o next?

Answer the questions:

A- Translate the sentences below:

1- Ele saiu da sala rapidamente porque tinha outro compromisso.

He left the room quickly because he had another appointment.

2- Ela faz todas as tarefas cuidadosamente.

She does all the tasks carefully.

3- Eles cantam muito bem.

They sing very well.

4- Estou esperando pacientemente na sala do médico.

I am patiently waiting in the doctor's room.

5- Os jovens normalmente dirigem imprudentemente.

Young people usually drive recklessly.

6- Nós sempre falamos educadamente com as pessoas.

We always talk politely to people.

7- A máquina sempre liga automaticamente.

The machine always turns itself on automatically.

8- Eles são lentos e fazem tudo lentamente.

They are slow and do everything slowly.

9- Ela chegou aqui repentinamente pedindo ajuda.

She suddenly showed up here asking for help.

10- Nós trabalhamos duramente para alcançar esses resultados.

We work hard to achieve these results.

11- Ele castigou severamente seus filhos.

He severely punished his children.

12- Este carro é muito bonito e ele é veloz.

This car is very beautiful and it is fast.

13- Eles falaram gentilmente com os policiais?

Did they talk kindly to the police?

14- O juiz o sentenciou erroneamente.

The judge wrongly sentenced him.

15- O atleta pulou muito alto.

The athlete jumped very high.

16- O médico segurou o bebê gentilmente.

The doctor held the baby gently.

17- Você falará inglês fluentemente muito em breve.

You will speak English fluently very soon.

Complete the sentences:

B- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words given:

- 1- Young people talk really fast (fast) and they don't speak clearly (clear). They also use a lot of slangs. It sounds terrible (terrible).
- 2- People aren't very patient (patient) when they have to wait in long lines. They don't speak to the clerks very politely (polite), either.
- 3- Sometimes families argue because parents and children see things differently (different).
- 4- A lot of people automatically (automatic) answer their cell phones when they ring, even at dinner. I think that's just rude (rude).
- 5- People don't feel safe (safe) on the roads because so many people are driving recklessly (reckless).
- 6- A lot of people try hard (hard) to do their job carefully (careful) and they get stressed.
- 7- Do you do your homework easily (easy) and quickly (quick)?
- 8- Do you practice English regularly (regular) outside the classroom?
- 9- Do you usually do well (good) on tests?

C – Choose the correct words to complete the sentences:

- 1- I know this sounds **bad** / **badly**, but I love to drive really **quick** / **fast**. I think I drive really **good** / **well**, though. I don't get **reckless** / **recklessly** when I get behind the wheel or anything.
- 3- I try **hard** / **hardly** to be neat and tidy. Like, I always put my keys on the shelf **automatic** / **automatically** when I get home.. You can lose your keys so **easy** / **easily**.
- 4- I think it's **important** / **importantly** to take work **serious** / **seriously**. I mean, it only seems right. If you do a job **good** / **well** you feel **good** / **well** about yourself, too.

D- Answer the questions using the word in parentheses:

- 1- How does he speak in public? (loudly)
He speaks *loudly*.
- 2- How do you behave when you are in a job interview? (nervously)
I behave *nervously*.
- 3- How do you walk at the park? (slowly)
I walk *slowly*.
- 4- How do you live your life? (happily)
I live *happily*.

Answer the questions:

A- Choose the right expression to agree with the statements:

1- Daniel likes to go fishing with his kids on Sundays.

a) Neither do I. **b) So do I.** c) So am I.

2- His wife doesn't like to go with them because she gets sick.

a) So does mine. b) Mine too. **c) Neither does mine.**

3- My children study English at Aliança América.

a) I don't **b) Me too.** c) I do so.

4- I am very happy to be learning English easily.

a) So am I. b) So do I. c) Am I too.

B- Translate the sentences below:

1 - Eu tenho alguns bons livros para aprender inglês.

I have some good books to learn English.

2 - Ninguém quer aprender mandarim.

Nobody wants to learn Mandarin.

3 - Você quer um pouco de café?

Do you want some coffee?

4 - Tem algo que eu preciso te contar. Me ligue, por favor.

There's something I need to tell you. Call me please.

C - Choose the correct verb to complete the sentences:

1- When I wake up I must _____ my bed. (do / **make**)

2- He mistakes when he is _____ his homework. (do / **make**)

3- They usually _____ the shopping on weekends. (**do** / make)

4- Could you _____ me a favor? (**do** / make)

D- Choose the correct word to complete the sentences:

1- Peter is a (**peaceful** / peacefully) man. He never fights.

2- She answered all the questions (**clever** / cleverly).

3- My neighbor is very kind. She always speaks to us (**polite** / politely).

4- It's a (**dangerous** / dangerously) street. Be careful.

5- I run very (**fast** / fastly).

Answer the questions:

1- I have a friend in the USA. He works for a landscaping company.

~~I have a friend in the USA who works for a landscaping company.~~

2- There was a nice guy in my building. He was really good at telling jokes.

~~There was a nice guy in my building who was really good at telling jokes.~~

3- One of my friends from class has a soccer ball. His favorite player signed it.

~~One of my friends from class has a soccer ball (that / Ø) his favorite player signed.~~

4- My sister has a very nice ring. Her husband gave it to her.

~~My sister has a very nice ring, which her husband gave to her.~~

5- I have a new friend. I met him at Aliança América.

~~I have a new friend (whom / Ø) I met at Aliança América.~~

6- My wife and I saw a comedy movie last night. It made us laugh a lot.

~~My wife and I saw a comedy movie last night that made us laugh a lot.~~

7- They called a plumber. He lives down the street.

~~They called a plumber who lives down the street.~~

8- I accidentally broke the computer. The computer was new.

~~I accidentally broke the computer, which was new.~~

9- They live in the countryside. The countryside is in the north of the city.

~~They live in the countryside, which is in the north of the city.~~

10- My sister has three children. My sister lives in Florida.

~~My sister, who lives in Florida, has three children.~~

11- I have many friends. I only contact them occasionally.

~~I have many friends (whom / Ø) I only contact occasionally.~~

12- My sister has a friend. She often goes out with her.

~~My sister has a friend who often goes out with her.~~

13- There is a co-worker in the company. He is always apologizing to the boss.

~~There is a co-worker in the company who is always apologizing to the boss.~~

14- New York city. It is the capital of New York State, it's big.

~~New York City, which is the capital of New York State, is a big city.~~

15- He lost the money. I gave him the money.

~~He lost the money (that / Ø) I gave him.~~

16- The food was delicious. My mom cooked the food.

~~The food (that / Ø) my mom cooked was delicious~~

Answer the questions:

B- Choose the right relative pronoun to complete each relative clause:

1- I know a sporting goods store you can
buy some nice weights.

- a) that
- b) who
- c) where

2- Susie knows a girl brother works for my dad's
company.

- a) who
- b) whose
- c) whom

3- Students study at Aliança América learn
English easily

- a) when
- b) whose
- c) who

4- Goods are imported from other countries are
very expensive due to the currency exchange rate.

- a) that
- b) where
- c) why

5- The bad weather is the reason we
couldn't grow any culture this season.

- a) when
- b) where

c) why

6- The roast beef you roasted was absolutely
perfect and delicious.

- a) that
- b) who
- c) where

7- My father remembers the time
he fought for the army in Vietnam.

- a) where
- b) when
- c) whose

8- The people names were selected to win the
prize must check-in by the end of the day.

- a) whose
- b) whom
- c) who

9- Can you lend me the book you bought last
week? It is really interesting!

- a) Why
- b) Who
- c) that

10- My grandma's house is a place I can
relax and forget everything for a while.

- a) who
- b) where
- c) when

1- The new movie is about a soldier **who** was convicted of a crime.

2- He is the salesman **who** surpassed the goals.

3- The DVD recorder **that** I bought at this store a few days ago is not working.

4- That's the book **that** I recommended reading in class.

5- Is this the hotel **where** you are staying for the tournament?

6- My dad, **who** travels a lot on business, is in Australia at the moment.

7- It was midnight **when** the first rescue team arrived at the scene of the accident.

8- There are several reasons **why** I am not allowed to give you any information.

9- We stayed at the famous Rockstar hotel, **which** also had an indoor swimming pool.

10- Did you write back to the person **who** offered you a job?

11- The story is about a young woman **whose** 5-year old son suddenly disappears.

12- The tennis court they usually play is currently not available.

where

Answer the questions:

A- Translate the sentences below

1- Se as pessoas comem muito, elas engordam.

If people eat a lot, they get fatter.

2- Se eu ficar exposto ao frio, eu pego um resfriado.

If I get exposed to the cold, I catch a cold.

3- Cobras picam se elas se assustam.

Snakes bite if they get scared.

4- Se os bebês sentem fome, eles choram.

If babies feel hunger, they cry.

5- As pessoas morrem se elas não comem.

People die if they don't eat.

6- O óleo flutua se você o coloca na água.

Oil floats if you put it in water.

7- Se o transporte público é eficiente, as pessoas param de usar os carros.

If the public transport is efficient, people stop using cars.

8- A grama fica molhada quando chove.

The grass gets wet when it rains.

9- Se ele coloca sal na água, ela fica salgada.

If he puts salt in the water, it becomes salty.

10- As plantas morrem se elas não recebem água.

Plants die if they don't get water.

11- Se chover, não irei ao parque.

If it rains, I won't go to the park.

12- Se você estudar bastante, você vai passar na prova.

If you study a lot, you will pass the test.

13- Comprarei algumas pares de sapatos se eu tiver dinheiro.

I will buy a few pairs of shoes if I have money.

14- Se ela não sair logo, ela perderá o ônibus.

If she doesn't leave soon, she will miss the bus.

15- Se eu ganhar na loteria, comprarei uma mansão.

If I win the lottery, I will buy a mansion.

16- Se você quiser, eu posso ir com você.

If you want, I can go with you.

17- Se eles me chamarem, eu vou pra festa deles.

If they call me, I'll go to their party.

Answer the questions:

B- Match the two columns to make conditional clauses:

1- C

2- F

3- A

4- M

5- I

6- B

7- O

8- D

9- E

10- G

11- N

12- H

13- J

14- K

15- L Lição 27, PG 93

Complete the sentences:

C- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb given:

1- If we hurry, we will get there in time. (HURRY, GET)

2- I won't go to the doctor unless the pain increases. (NOT GO, INCREASE)

3- If you smoke in public places, you get into trouble. (SMOKE, GET)

4- We will go for a picnic tomorrow if the weather stays nice. (GO, STAY)

5- Everyone will believe you if you tell them the truth. (BELIEVE, TELL)

6- If he doesn't wake up, he won't get to work on time. (NOT WAKE UP, NOT GET)

7- If she loses her keys, she will be angry. (LOSE, BE)

8- If the baby is a boy, I will call him Jonathan. (BE, CALL)

9- You will cause an accident if you drive so carelessly. (CAUSE, DRIVE)

10- She will regret it if she doesn't tell me the truth. (REGRET, NOT TELL)

11- If you don't leave the house now, you will be late for the meeting. (NOT LEAVE, BE)

12- Margaret won't come to the party unless you invite her. (NOT COME, INVITE)

13- I will help you with the dishes if you are tired. (H1E4LP, BE)

Answer the questions:

A- Translate the sentences below:

1- Se eu fosse aos Estados Unidos, eu compraria muita coisa lá.

If I went to the United States, I would buy a lot of stuff there.

2- O que você faria se ganhasse uma Ferrari?

What would you do if you won a Ferrari?

3- Se eu visse uma cobra na rua, eu sairia correndo.

If I saw a snake on the street, I would run away.

4- Se ela me falasse como fazer isso, eu faria sem problemas.

If she told me how to do this, I would do it without any problems.

5- Ele não compraria todas essas coisas se não precisasse.

He wouldn't buy all these things if he didn't need to.

6- Eu pintaria minha casa se tivesse tempo livre.

I would paint my house if I had free time.

7- Eu iria ao cinema hoje se não tivesse que trabalhar.

I would go to the cinema today if I didn't have to work.

8- O que eles fariam se alguém falasse pra eles a verdade?

What would they do if someone told them the truth?

9- Eu comeria uma pizza se não estivesse de regime.

I would eat a pizza if I wasn't on a diet.

10- Se eu fosse você, não me preocuparia tanto.

If I were you, I wouldn't worry that much.

11- Eu dirigiria para Las Vegas se a gasolina não estivesse tão cara.

I would drive to Las Vegas if gas wasn't so expensive.

12- Se essa empresa me contratasse, eu seria o diretor.

If this company hired me, I would be the director.

13- Se eu tivesse que trabalhar, eu não teria tempo para ficar aqui.

If I had to work, I wouldn't have time to stay here.

14- Se ele respeitasse mais os patrões, ele não perderia seus empregos.

If he respected his bosses more, he would not lose his jobs.

15- Se morássemos na Espanha, seríamos felizes.

If we lived in Spain, we would be happy.

16- Se eu tivesse um milhão de dólares, compraria uma mansão.

If I had a million dollars, I would buy a mansion.

17- Se eu fosse para Madrid, eu visitaria os pontos turísticos.

If I went to Madrid, I would visit the tourist attractions.

Complete the sentences:

B- Rewrite the sentences and use the second conditional. Keep the same meaning:

Example

My car is broken down. I won't drive you there.

If my car wasn't out of order, I would drive you there.

1. *I don't know his phone number. I can't contact him.*

If I knew his phone number, I would contact him.

2. *He is sick. He can't go skiing.*

If he wasn't sick, he would go skiing.

3. *He doesn't like pasta. He won't eat the spaghetti.*

If he liked pasta, he would eat the spaghetti.

4. *I travel on my own because I speak English.*

I wouldn't travel on my own if I didn't English.

5. *We don't have enough room in our house. You can't stay with us.*

If we had enough room in our house, you could stay with us.

6. *You aren't lucky. You won't win.*

If you were lucky, you would win.

7. *I go to bed early because I work very hard.*

I wouldn't go to bed early if I didn't work so hard.

8. *I am eighteen. I can vote.*

If I wasn't eighteen, I couldn't vote.

9. *Go to Corfu. You will like it.*

If you went to Corfu, you would it.

10. *You are anxious. You won't manage it.*

You would manage it if you weren't anxious.

C- Write sentences with the second conditional learned:

1- If I were If I were younger, I would practice an extreme sport.

2- If I had If I had children, I wouldn't be working here.

3- If I knew If I knew how to help him, I would.

4- If I won If I won a new car, I would probably sell it.

5- What would you do if What would you do if you found a wallet on the s

6- Where would you go if Where would you go if you had to move some w

7- If they broke If they broke the glasses, I would buy them plastic cups instead.

8- If we studied If we studied any less, we wouldn't be successful do

Answer the questions:

A- Translate the sentences below:

1- Eu costumava comer muito chocolate mas agora estou de dieta.

I u s e d t o e a t a l o t o f c h o c o l a t e , b u t n o w I ' m o n a d i e t .

2- Você costumava ir direto pra casa quando estudava no colégio?

D i d y o u u s e t o g o s t r a i g h t h o m e w h e n y o u s t u d i e d i n s c h o o l ?

3- Ela costumava falar com seus avós sobre seus estudos.

S h e u s e d t o t a l k t o h e r g r a n d p a r e n t s a b o u t h e r s t u d i e s .

4- O que você costumava fazer aos domingos quando era criança?

W h a t d i d y o u u s e t o d o o n S u n d a y s w h e n y o u w e r e a k i d ?

5- Estou acostumado a ficar em casa sozinho quando meus pais saem para trabalhar.

I ' m u s e d t o b e i n g h o m e a l o n e w h e n m y p a r e n t s l e a v e t o w o r k .

6- Minha mãe está acostumada a ir ao supermercado sozinha.

M y m o t h e r i s u s e d t o g o i n g t o t h e s u p e r m a r k e t b y h e r s e l f .

7- Ele está acostumado a fazer hora extra toda semana.

H e i s a l r e a d y u s e d t o d o i n g o v e r t i m e e v e r y w e e k .

8- Eles se acostumaram a andar de cavalo.

T h e y g o t u s e d t o r i d i n g h o r s e s .

9- Não me acostumei a viver sem você.

I d i d n ' t g e t u s e d t o l i v i n g w i t h o u t y o u .

10- Seus pais estão acostumados com suas travessuras.

Y o u r p a r e n t s a r e u s e d t o y o u r t r i c k s .

11- Nós costumávamos fazer uma caminhada no parque quando não era perigoso.

W e u s e d t o t a k e a w a l k i n t h e p a r k w h e n i t w a s n ' t d a n g e r o u s .

12- Você se acostuma facilmente com as coisas?

D o y o u g e t u s e d t o t h i n g s e a s i l y ?

13- Não me acostumei com o clima dos Estados Unidos.

I d i d n ' t g e t u s e d t o t h e U n i t e d S t a t e s ' w e a t h e r .

14- Eles não eram costumados a andar por muito tempo.

T h e y w e r e n ' t u s e d t o w a l k i n g f o r a l o n g t i m e .

15- Vocês costumavam ir na casa de seus avós no Natal?

D i d y o u u s e t o g o t o y o u r g r a n d p a r e n t s ' h o u s e o n C h r i s t m a s ?

16- Eles estão acostumados com o novo chefe.

T h e y a r e u s e d t o t h e n e w b o s s .

17- Não me acostumei a acordar cedo.

I d i d n ' t g e t u s e d t o w a k i n g u p e a r l y .

Answer the questions:

B- Change the sentences below into negative and interrogative forms:

1. I used to live in a flat when I was a child.

I didn't use to live in a flat when I was a child.

Did I use to live in a flat when I was a child?

2. We use to go to the beach every summer.

We didn't use to go to the beach every summer.

Did we use to go to the beach every summer?

3. She used to love eating chocolate.

She didn't use to love eating chocolate.

Did she use to love eating chocolate?

4. He used to smoke.

He didn't use to smoke.

Did he use to smoke?

5. I used to play tennis when I was at school.

I didn't use to play tennis when I was at school.

Did I use to play tennis when I was at school?

6. She used to be able to speak French.

She didn't use to be able to speak French.

Did she use to be able to speak French?

7. He use to play golf every weekend.

He didn't use to play golf every weekend.

Did he use to play golf every weekend?

8. They both used to have short hair.

They both didn't use to have short hair.

Did they both use to have short hair?

9. Julie used to study Portuguese.

Julie didn't use to study Portuguese.

Did Julie use to study Portuguese?

C- Answer the questions below:

a. What did you use to do when you were little? I used to play on the computer all day long.

b. Where did you use to go at the end of the year? I used to go to the beach at the end of the year.

c. Are you used to running over the weekends? No, I'm not used to running at all.

d. What are you planning to get used to? I want to get used to studying English 2 hours a day.

e. Did you use to get good grades at school? Yes, I didn't use to get any grades below 8.

Answer the questions:

That is the man (whom / Ø) I need to talk to as soon as possible.

The movie is about a doctor who became the first doctor to get a brain surgery done.

That is the place where I grew up.

I met a grower whose company exports fruits.

My brother gave me a letter that was in a large envelope.

B- Translate the sentences below:

1- Se eu trabalhar, eu ganho dinheiro.

2- If he eats a lot, he gets fatter.

3- Se chover, não irei para o show.

If it rains, I won't go to the concert.

4- Se ganharmos na loteria, vamos comprar uma casa nova e um carro novo.

If we win the lottery, we will buy a new house and a new car.

C- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs to make the second conditional:

1- If I w_a_s (be) you, I w_o_u_l_d_b_u_y (buy) a new suit for the meeting.

2- He w_o_u_l_d_t_r_a_v_e_l (travel) around the world if he w_o_n (win) the lottery.

3- If we h_a_d (had) a new chance, we w_o_u_l_d_d_o (do) everything differently.

4- If she l_i_v_e_d (live) in Moscow, she w_o_u_l_d_h_a_t_e (hate) the cold weather.

D- Translate the sentences below:

1- Meus pais costumavam nos levar ao parque de diversão.

M_y_p_a_r_e_n_t_s_u_s_e_d_t_o_t_a_k_e_u_s_t_o_t_h_e_a_m_u_s_e_m_e_n_t_p_a_r_k.

2- Não estou acostumado a cozinhar.

I'_m_n_o_t_u_s_e_d_t_o_c_o_o_k_i_n_g.

3- Eles precisam se acostumar com a nova rotina de trabalho.

T_h_e_y_n_e_e_d_t_o_g_e_t_u_s_e_d_t_o_t_h_e_n_e_w_w_o_r_k_r_o_u_t_i_n_e.

4- Você está acostumado a fazer exercícios pela manhã?

A_r_e_y_o_u_u_s_e_d_t_o_e_x_e_r_c_i_s_i_n_g_i_n_t_h_e_m_o_r_n_i_n_g?

Answer the questions:

A- Use the words and phrases to write information questions in the present perfect:

1. How long / you / live / in this town?

How long have you lived in this town?

2. Where / you / be / lately?

Where have you been lately?

3. How many people / she / invite / for the party?

How many people has she invited to the party?

4. Who / be / to Canada?

Who has been to Canada?

5. Why / you / choose / this car?

Why have you chosen this car?

6. How long / Rose / live / here?

How long has Rose lived here?

7. What / you / cook / for lunch?

What have you cooked for lunch?

8. How much / you / spend / this week?

How much have you spent this week?

B- Complete these questions with the past participles of the verbs in the box. Then answer the questions:

Ex: Have you ever studied Spanish? Yes, I have / No, I haven't.

1- Have you ever **been** on television? **Answer:** Yes, I have / No, I haven't.

2- Have you ever **ridden** a horse? **Answer:** Yes, I have / No, I haven't.

3- Have you ever **eaten** Indian food? **Answer:** Yes, I have / No, I haven't.

4- Have you ever **met** a famous person? **Answer:** Yes, I have / No, I haven't.

5- Have you ever **flown** in a helicopter? **Answer:** Yes, I have / No, I haven't.

6- Have you ever **found** money in the street? **Answer:** Yes, I have / No, I haven't.

7- Have you ever **slept** over a friend's house? **Answer:** Yes, I have / No, I haven't.

Answer the questions:

C- Choose the best answer to complete each sentence:

1. She's been a teacher all her life, .
a. and she loved her job
b. **and she loves her job**
2. I've traveled to Europe a lot, and in 2001 .
a. I've gone to Africa
b. **I went to Africa**
3. I've had that car for five years, .
a. **and it never breaks down**
b. and I sold it
4. We haven't eaten at the Greek restaurant yet, .
a. so we tried it last night
b. **so we want to try it soon**
5. We haven't solved the problem yet, .
a. so we gave up
b. **but we aren't giving up**
6. Pedro is one of my best friends; .
a. **I've known him for a long time**
b. I knew him for a long time

D- Translate the sentences below using the present perfect tense:

1- Onde você esteve hoje?

Where have you been today?

2- Terminei de fazer todo meu dever de casa.

I've finished doing all my homework.

3- Fui para Alemanha muitas vezes nos últimos anos.

I've been to Germany many times in the last years.

4- Eles foram ao parque.

They've gone to the park.

5- O avião acabou de aterrissar.

The plane has just landed.

6- Não damos uma festa faz muito tempo.

We haven't had a party in a long time.

7- Não tem chovido esses dias.

It hasn't rained these days.

Complete the sentences:

A- Complete these time expressions and time clauses with for or since and then make sentences with them:

- | | |
|----------------------|---|
| 1. fothrree days. | I've slept here for three days. |
| 2. sin3c oe'clock | The kids have played since 3 o'clock |
| 3. foar long time | She's waited for her prince charming for a long time. |
| 4. foar moment | The president has been very quiet for a moment now. |
| 5. sinlacset month | I've taken this pill since last month. |
| 6. foar month | I haven't taken this pill for a month. |
| 7. sinhcee was a boy | He has loved ballet since he was a boy. |
| 8. sin1c9e88 | Have they been together since 1988? |

B- Complete the sentences below with FOR or SINCE:

- I've worked at this company _____ for _____ five months.
- That restaurant has been open _____ since theis month.
- Martin has lived there 20s1in2c.e
- It has rained _____ fo_r _____ a long time.
- The radio has been on _____ since five o'clock.
- I have wanted to be a lawyer _____ since I was a kid.
- Jeff has studied at this university _____ foar week.
- The telephones have been sold _____ sincyeesterday.
- They have been married for _____ three months.
- My uncle has been in New York _____ sinlacest Tuesday.
- The plumber has worked here _____ for 8 months.
- I've had this job _____ sincJeune.
- I haven't seen my friend _____ s_ince _____ last week.
- We've been without sleep _____ for _____ an hour.
- I haven't eaten sushi _____ for _____ several months.
- I have studied English at Aliança sinlacest year.
- My bike has been broken _____ for a long time.

Answer the questions:

C- Choose the correct preposition for each of the sentences:

1. We haven't seen him the summer.

a) since b) for c) from

2. I have been here three weeks.

a) since b) for c) from

3. We had our party 8:00 PM until 10:00 PM.

a) since b) for c) from

4. I have been sick Sunday.

a) since b) for c) from

5. They have been sick _____ three days.

a) since b) for c) from

6. I should be ready 30 minutes.

a) Since b) for c) in

7. Paul has not seen Jenny two days.

a) since b) for c) in

8. She has slept well _____ ten hours.

a) since b) for c) to

9. My sister will be here two hours.

a) since b) for c) to

10. I haven't drunk anything _____ this morning.

a) since b) for c) in

D- Answer the questions below:

1- How long have you studied English? I've studied English for eleven years.

2- How long have you been awake? I've been awake since 8 a.m.

3- How long have you had your current car? I've had my car since I was 25.

4- How long have you been married? ? We've been married for a decade.

5- How long have you lived in your house? I have lived in my house since last December

Answer the questions:

A- Answer the questions with true information. Add an adverb where

necessary: 1- What's something exciting you've done?

I've been rock climbing once.

2- What's something scary you've done?

I have been skydiving many times already.

3- What's something boring you've done in the last month?

I've stayed home to do the chores.

4- How many times have you been late to class recently?

I haven't been late to class lately.

5- What country have you always wanted to visit?

I have always wanted to visit Thailand. They have beautiful forests.

6- What kind of food have you never tried before?

I have never tried Swedish food.

7- What movie have you seen several times?

I have watched Shrek 2 twelve times already.

8- What's something you've never done, but always wanted to do?

I have always wanted to buy my mom an expensive gift. I haven't done it yet because I don't have the money.

B- Complete the conversations with the simple past or present perfect:

1. A Have you ever gone (go) cliff diving?

B - No, I haven't It sounds too scary! Have you done (do) it?

A - Yeah, I went (go) last weekend.

B - Wow! You're brave. How was (be) it? A- It was incredible! I loved (love) it.

2. A - I have never traveled (travel) alone. How about you?

B - No, but I have always wanted (want) to. I'm sure it's exciting.

A - I think so, too. Do you know my friend Jill? She took (take) a hiking trip alone last year.

B - I know. I spoke (speak) to her about it last week.

3. A - Have you never tried (try) horseback riding?

B - Yeah. I actually did (do) it once several year ago.

A - Really? Did you like (like) it?

B - No, not really. It was (be) very scary.

A - Oh, too bad. I go all the time. I have gotten (get) really good at it..

Answer the questions:

C- Choose the word for each of the sentences:

1. We _____ haven't seen him today.
a) already **b) still** c) yet

2. I have _____ wanted to go to the National Park.
a) always b) still c) yet

3. We haven't had our birthday party _____.
a) still b) never **c) yet**

4. Have you _____ written a book?
a) still b) never **c) ever**

5. They have _____ gotten late to class, unfortunately.
a) never **b) always** c) still

6. My parents have _____ arrived from grocery shopping.
a) still b) yet **c) just**

7. Paul has _____ sent me the answers for the science test. Now I can do it!
a) just b) still c) never

8. She _____ hasn't traveled to her hometown.
a) already b) yet **c) still**

9. My sister has _____ gotten her birthday gift. Why haven't I?
a) yet **b) already** c) never

10. I've _____ been to any country in Europe.
a) yet b) always **c) never**

Answer the questions below:

1- Have you ever ridden a Kawasaki ZX11? _____
I haven't, but Rosalía has.

2- Have you ever driven for more than 15 hours without stopping? _____
No, I haven't done this yet.

3- Have you ever eaten an exotic food? _____
Yes, I have already eaten shark meat.

4- Have you ever lived abroad? _____
No, I actually still haven't been abroad.

Complete the sentences:

A- Complete the sentences below with the appropriate conjugation and structure:

1 - My sister **has been sleeping** (sleep) all day.

2 - **Has Greg been doing** (Greg do) his homework?

3 - It **hasn't been raining** (rain) **for** weeks.

4 - I got a bad grade because I **haven't been studying** (not study) hard.

5 - They **have been driving** (drive) **for** two hours.

6 - Mary and Jerry **have been running** (run) marathons **since** they were young.

7 - **Have you been waiting** (you wait) **for** a long time?

8 - Where **have you been spending** (you spend) your summer holidays?

9 - Who **has been eating** (eat) my cookies?

10 - **Have you been working** (you work) hard?

11 - I **have been thinking** (think) about quitting my job.

12 - Why **have you been getting** (you get up) so early recently?

B- Translate the sentences below:

1- Meus irmãos vêm procurando por mim o dia todo.

My brothers have been looking for me all day.

2- Os jogadores estão molhados porque vêm jogando na chuva desde cedo.

The players are wet because they have been playing in the rain since early in the morning.

3- Eles vêm pintando o quarto deles por 3 horas.

They have been painting their room for 3 hours.

4- Ele vem morando na casa ao lado por 6 meses e eu não havia percebido.

He has been living next door for 6 months and I hadn't noticed.

5- Por quanto tempo você vem esperando pelo médico?

How long have you been waiting for the doctor?

6- Por que você não vêm comendo carne ultimamente?

Why haven't you been eating meat lately?

Answer the questions:

A- Translate the sentences below:

1- Tenho trabalhado na redecação da minha casa e ainda não terminei.

I've been working on redecoating my house and haven't finished.

2- Ele ficou tão chateado com a chuva que não consegue ligar para ela.

It's been raining all day. It even seems like the rain will never stop.

3- Está chovendo o dia todo. Parece até que a chuva nunca vai parar.

I did a lot of work this morning and it's only 11 a.m.

4- Desde que começamos a estudar há mais de um ano e esperamos estar prontos para o teste.

We have been studying for the tests since October. I hope that we'll be ready by then.

5- Ela acabou de terminar o dever de casa que o professor deixou para ela.

I've been looking for the kids all morning. I don't know where they are.

6- Ele está esperando você o dia todo. Onde você esteve?

I've been waiting for you all day. Where have you been?

7- Venho procurando pelas crianças a manhã toda. Não sei onde elas podem estar.

Michelle has piloted a plane before, but I don't know if he will be.

8- Já fomos à Índia duas vezes e cada viagem foi uma experiência inesquecível.

I've been to India twice and each trip was an unforgettable experience.

9- Venho esperando por você o dia todo. Por onde esteve?

Patricio has failed the driving test twice. He must prepare himself.

10- A minha irmã foi para a Espanha e ficou lá por duas semanas. Ela não precisa de nós.

People have been complaining about the slow Internet all afternoon.

11- Decidi não aceitar a oferta de trabalho.

My brother has worked for this company for 30 years and never.

12- O João não conseguiu passar no teste de direção. Ele precisa se preparar melhor.

What have you been doing lately to improve your English level?

13- Patrício reprovou duas vezes no teste de direção. Ele precisa se preparar melhor.

Respostas do INTERMEDIATE ENGLISH,
referente lição 36, PG 122

A- Transform the direct speech into reported speech:

1. "He works at a school called Aliança América."

He said he worked at a school called Aliança América.

2. "We went to a nice restaurant last night."

She told me they had gone to a nice restaurant the previous night / we had gone to a nice restaurant the previous night.

3. "I'm coming to town next week!"

She said she was coming to town in the following week.

4. "I was waiting for the food when he called me."

She told me she was waiting for the food when he called her.

5. "I've never been to California before."

She said she had never been to California before.

6. "I didn't go to the party because it was raining."

She told me she hadn't gone to the party because it was raining.

7. "Jennifer will come after the party."

She said Jennifer would come after the party.

8. "He hasn't had lunch yet."

She told me he hadn't had lunch yet.

9. "I can do the chores tomorrow."

She said she could do the chores the following day.

10. "You should take some time off."

She told me I should take some time off.

11. "I don't like to go to noisy places."

She told me she didn't like to go to noisy places.

12. "I won't drive to work tomorrow."

She said she wouldn't drive to work the next day.

13. "She's living in Paris for a few months."

She said she was living in Paris for a few months.

14. "I visited my relatives last weekend."

She told me she had visited her relatives the previous weekend.

15. "She hasn't eaten sushi before."

She said she hadn't eaten sushi before.

16. "I haven't been to London. I heard it's a beautiful city."

She said she hadn't been to London and that she had heard it was a beautiful city.

17. "They would buy a new house if they could."

She said they would buy a new house if they could.

18. "I'll do the cleaning tomorrow. I'm too tired today."

She told me she would do the cleaning in the next day because she was too tired that day.

Answer the questions:

C- Rewrite the sentences into the active voice:

1- The telephone was invented by Alexander Graham Bell.

Alexander Graham Bell invented the telephone.

2- This book was written by a very famous writer.

A very famous writer wrote this book.

3- The director was hired by the president of the company.

The president of the company hired the director.

4- The cake was made by his brother.

His brother made the cake.

5- The movie is being played by them at the Center Mall Movies.

They are playing the movie at the Center Mall Movies.

6- The exotic car has been bought by a rich man.

A rich man bought the exotic car.

7- The house will be cleaned by the maid.

The maid will clean the house.

8- Can the match be won by these players?

Can these players win the match?

9- That house was built ten years ago by my father.

My father built that house ten years ago.

Respostas do INTERMEDIATE ENGLISH,
referente lição 39, PG 134

A- Translate the sentences below:

1- Eu teria viajado nas minhas férias se tivesse guardado dinheiro.

I would have traveled on my vacation if I had saved money.

2- Se eles tivessem chegado mais cedo, eles não teriam perdido o trem.

If they had arrived earlier, they wouldn't have missed the train.

3- Se você tivesse me ligado, eu teria vindo aqui te ajudar.

If you had called me, I would have come here to help you.

4- Se nós tivéssemos guardado dinheiro, nós teríamos comprado um carro novo.

If we had saved money, we would have bought a new car.

5- Se o clima estivesse melhor esta semana, nós teríamos ido à praia.

If the weather had been better this week, we would have gone to the beach.

6- Se nós tivéssemos visto Mary na festa, teríamos conversado com ela.

If we had seen Mary at the party, we would have talked to her.

7- Você teria terminado a prova se tivesse tido mais tempo?

Would you have finished the test if you had had more time?

8- Você teria feito algo diferentemente na sua vida se tivesse tido a chance?

Would you have done something differently in your life if you had had the chance?

9- Eles não teriam perdido o voo se eles tivessem prestado atenção aos avisos.

They wouldn't have missed the flight if they had paid attention to the announcements.

10- Ela não teria ficado tão exausta se tivesse ido para a cama mais cedo.

She wouldn't have gotten so exhausted if she had gone to bed earlier.

11- Ele teria chegado a tempo para a reunião se tivesse saído de casa às oito.

He would have arrived in time for the meeting if he had left the house at eight.

12- Se minha mãe tivesse me visto na rua, ela teria me deixado de castigo.

If my mother had seen me on the street, she would have grounded me.

13- Se você tivesse sabido a resposta, você teria levantado a sua mão.

If you had known the answer, you would have raised your hand.

14- Se eu tivesse falado contigo, você poderia ter feito algo para me ajudar.

If I had talked to you, you could have done something to help me.

15- Se eu tivesse ido a Hollywood, eu poderia ter conhecido uma estrela de cinema.

If I had gone to Hollywood, I could have met a movie star.

16- Ela teria tido um ataque se tivesse me visto.

She would have had an outburst if she had seen me.

17- Se eu estivesse com sede, eu teria bebido água.

If I had been thirsty, I would have drunk water.

18- O que ele teria feito se tivesse ganhado na loteria?

What would he have done if he had won the lottery?

Complete the sentences:

B- Complete the sentences with the appropriate third conditional:

- 1- If I had studied more, I would have passed the exam. (study, pass)
- 2- Mark would have called me if he hadn't lost my cell number. (call, not lose)
- 3- We wouldn't have taken a cab if the public transport workers hadn't been on strike. (not take, not be)
- 4- Mom would have taken us to the beach if it hadn't rained. (take, not rain)
- 5- If I had known you were coming, I would have met you at the airport. (know, meet)
- 6- I would have bought them a gift if they had invited me to their wedding. (buy, invite)
- 7- If we had taken a map with us, we would have reached the village in time. (take, reach)
- 8- If Bob had got up earlier, he would have reached the train. (get, reach)
- 9- If I hadn't gone shopping, what would you have eaten? (not go, you eat)
- 10- If you hadn't paid the fine, you would have been sent to prison. (pay, be sent)
- 11- She wouldn't have visited me if she had known I was busy. (not visit, know)
- 12- We would have flown to Spain if there had been the right flight. (fly, be)
- 13- My dad wouldn't have married mom if she had been a poor lady. (not marry, be)
- 14- If the wall had been built properly it wouldn't have broken down down. (be built, not break)
- 15- If I had been more careful, I wouldn't have made so many mistakes. (be, not make)
- 16- I would have arrived there in time if the weather had been better (arrive, be)
- 17- If I had had more time, I would have done my homework. (have, do)
- 18- If Patty had behaved well, my aunt would have taken her to the zoo. (behave, take)
- 19- If I hadn't been listening to the stereo, I would have heard the doorbell. (not listen, hear)
- 20- If he had come with us to the cinema, he would have enjoyed himself. (come, enjoy)

C- Complete the sentences below:

- 1- If I had known you, I would have bought you a souvenir from my trip to Indonesia
- 2- They would have gone away if the cops had arrived.
- 3- The company could have hired more workers if there had been a bigger budget.
- 4- If we had found it out before, we could have done something to prevent the disaster.
- 5- If I had won the lottery, I wouldn't have kept all the money to myself.

Respostas do INTERMEDIATE ENGLISH,
referente lição 40, PG 136

A- Translate the sentences below according to the last 4 lessons studied:

1- Ela disse que o professor dela havia passado muito tempo em casa para esse final de semana.

S_h_e_s_a_i_d_t_h_a_t_t_h_e_t_e_a_c_h_e_r_h_a_d_g_i_v_e_n_h_e_r_a_l_o_t_o_f_h_o_m_e_w_o_r_k_f_o_r_t_h_e_w_e_e_k_e_n_d.

2- Você disse que a máquina estava funcionando perfeitamente, mas não está.

Y_o_u_s_a_i_d_t_h_a_t_t_h_e_m_a_c_h_i_n_e_w_a_s_w_o_r_k_i_n_g_p_e_r_f_e_c_t_l_y_,_b_u_t_i_t_i_s_n_o_t.

3- Eles disseram que o carro deles tinha sido roubado na noite anterior.

T_h_e_y_s_a_i_d_t_h_e_i_r_c_a_r_h_a_d_b_e_e_n_s_t_o_l_e_n_t_h_e_n_i_g_h_t_b_e_f_o_r_e.

4- O gerente disse que Mark tem faltado no trabalho ultimamente.

T_h_e_m_a_n_a_g_e_r_s_a_i_d_t_h_a_t_M_a_r_k_h_a_s_b_e_e_n_m_i_s_s_i_n_g_w_o_r_k_l_a_t_e_l_y.

5- O artigo no jornal foi escrito por um jornalista não profissional.

T_h_e_a_r_t_i_c_l_e_o_n_t_h_e_n_e_w_s_p_a_p_e_r_w_a_s_w_r_i_t_t_e_n_b_y_a_n_u_n_p_r_o_f_e_s_s_i_o_n_a_l_j_o_u_r_n_a_l_i_s_t.

6- Os trabalhadores têm sido prejudicados diretamente pela pandemia.

W_o_r_k_e_r_s_h_a_v_e_b_e_e_n_d_i_r_e_c_t_l_y_h_a_r_m_e_d_b_y_t_h_e_p_a_n_d_e_m_i_c.

7- Esses prédios têm sido construídos com o acompanhamento de um engenheiro?

H_a_v_e_t_h_e_s_e_b_u_i_l_d_i_n_g_s_b_e_e_n_b_u_i_l_t_u_n_d_e_r_t_h_e_s_u_p_e_r_v_i_s_i_o_n_o_f_a_n_e_n_g_i_n_e_e_r.

8- O relatório estará feito e entregue até amanhã.

T_h_e_r_e_p_o_r_t_w_i_l_l_b_e_d_o_n_e_a_n_d_d_e_l_i_v_e_r_e_d_b_y_t_o_m_o_r_r_o_w.

9- Eu teria te convidado pra a festa, mas fiquei preso no trabalho.

I_w_o_u_l_d_h_a_v_e_i_n_v_i_t_e_d_y_o_u_t_o_t_h_e_p_a_r_t_y_,_b_u_t_I_g_o_t_s_t_u_c_k_a_t_w_o_r_k.

10- Me desculpe por ter vindo assim, eu deveria ter te avisado.

I'_m_s_o_r_r_y_f_o_r_h_a_v_i_n_g_c_o_m_e_l_i_k_e_t_h_i_s_,_I_s_h_o_u_l_d_h_a_v_e_w_a_r_n_e_d_y_o_u.

11- As crianças não saíram, mas elas poderiam ter ido com o vizinho.

T_h_e_c_h_i_l_d_r_e_n_d_i_d_n'_t_g_o_o_u_t_,_b_u_t_t_h_e_y_c_o_u_l_d_h_a_v_e_g_o_n_e_o_u_t_w_i_t_h_t_h_e_n_e_i_g_h_b_o_r.

12- Eu acho que os bandidos podem ter fugido a pé.

I_t_h_i_n_k_t_h_e_b_a_n_d_i_t_s_m_i_g_h_t_h_a_v_e_f_l_e_d_o_n_f_o_o_t.

13- Ela poderia ter ido ao supermercado sozinha para fazer as compras?

C_o_u_l_d_s_h_e_h_a_v_e_g_o_n_e_t_o_t_h_e_s_u_p_e_r_m_a_r_k_e_t_a_l_o_n_e_t_o_d_o_t_h_e_s_h_o_p_p_i_n_g.

14- Se você tivesse me avisado antes, eu não teria permitido que João saísse.

I_f_y_o_u_h_a_d_w_a_r_n_e_d_m_e_b_e_f_o_r_e_,_I_w_o_u_l_d_n't_h_a_v_e_a_l_l_o_w_e_d_J_o_ã_o_t_o_l_e_a_v_e.

15- Eles poderiam ter evitado o acidente se estivessem dirigindo devagar.

T_h_e_y_c_o_u_l_d_h_a_v_e_a_v_o_i_d_e_d_t_h_e_a_c_c_i_d_e_n_t_i_f_t_h_e_y_h_a_d_b_e_e_n_d_r_i_v_i_n_g_s_l_o_w.

Answer the questions:

A-Complete the sentences with the **Simple Past** or the **Past Perfect**:

- 1- I **had worried OR worried** (worry) a lot about her before I **heard** . (hear) that she was safe.
- 2- I didn't like the car. It **was** (be) much smaller than I **had thought OR thought** (think) at first.
- 3- He told us he **had traveled** (travel) to many Asian countries.
- 4- They **ate** . (eat) dessert after they **had had OR had** . (have) dinner.
- 5- She **had** just **arrived** (arrive) before we **called** (call) her parents.
- 6- The Principal wanted to know why he **had brought** (bring) a toy to school.
- 7- After he **had worked** work) at the company for ten years he **decided** (decide) to quit his job.
- 8- When I **arrived** (arrive) at the party John **had finished OR finished** already **had already gone** (go) home.
- 9- We **waited** (wait) until the match **finished** . (finish).
- 10- They **had left OR left** (leave) the room before the meeting **finished** (finish).
- 11- I **had bought OR bought** (buy) a new camera before I **went** (go) to Boston.
- 12- I **had just** **turned off** (turn off) the lights when the phone **rang** (ring).
- 13- **Had** he. **known** (know) her for a long time before they **got** (get) married?
- 14- He **drove** (drive) down the hotel where they **had spent OR spent** (spend) their honeymoon years ago.
- 15- When we **got** (get) to the station the train **had already left** (already / leave).
- 16- He **sat** (sit) at a table by the window where he **had had OR had** (have) a meal with Jane.
- 17- Why **hadn't** he **asked OR didn't he ask** (not / ask) his mom before she **left** . (leave) to work?
- 18- He was wondering why he **had let OR let** (let) her leave the office so early.
- 19- He knew he **had earned OR earned** (earn) that money with great difficulty.
- 20- After they **had gone** (go) home, he **sat down** (sit down) and **lit up** (light up) a cigarette.
- 21- He **had** (have to) go to work by bus because his car **had broken down OR broke down** (break) down.
- 22- He **had complained OR complained** (complain) before he **heard** (hear) my offer.

Answer the questions:

A- Complete the story about a strange coincidence. Use either the simple past or the past perfect. Sometimes both are possible:

A few weeks ago, my friend Jean moved into a new house across town. I was really happy

when she **asked** (ask) me to come over last week because I **hadn't had**.

(not have) ~~the chance~~ to see the place yet. It took me a while ~~to get there~~ because

I **didn't go** (not go) to her new neighborhood very often and I **got** (get) a little lost.

But luckily, Jean **had sent** (send) me careful directions. _____

Anyway, when I finally **arrived** (arrive) at the house, it **looked**

_____ (look) so familiar.

I was sure I **had been** (be) there before. Then I realized that I had! I **had dated OR dated** (date)

someone who **lived** (live) there. I **had been** (be) in the house several times before. It was weird.

I **hadn't thought** (not think) of that guy in twenty years! When I **told** (tell) Jean about it,

she **didn't believe** (not believe) me at first. What a coincidence!

B- Complete the sentences with the past simple or past perfect using the words in parentheses in the correct form:

1. My aunt flew to Paris last year. She **had never been** (never / go) on a plane before that.

2. We didn't need to wait because my wife **had already bought** (already / buy) the tickets.

3. The thieves had already spent the money when the police **caught** (catch) them.

4. Helen **had split up OR split up** (split up) with John before she met Paul.

5. We **knew** (know) her address because she **had told** (tell) us.

6. The children **hadn't eaten** (not eat) for days so they **were** (be) extremely hungry.

7. Everyone **hugged** (hug) each other after they **had finished OR finished** (finish) their exams.

8.- She didn't want to go to the cinema because she **had already seen** (already / see) the film.

9.- I **had just bought** (just / buy) a dress when a thief **stole** (steal) my bag.

10. My niece **had gone** (go) to London three times by the time she **was** (be) sixteen.

11. My students **raised** (raise) some money after they **had seen OR saw** (see) a documentary on TV about

Africa.

12. It was half past three and we still **hadn't eaten** (not / eat) lunch.

13. Our teacher **gave** (give) us extra homework because we **hadn't finished OR didn't finish** (not finish) our essays.

14. My father **lost** (lose) his glasses and he couldn't read the newspaper.

15. The car stopped because we **had run/ran** (run) out of gas.

16. He **felt** (feel) very ill because he **hadn't slept** (not sleep) well.

Answer the questions:

C- Translate the sentences below:

1- Mary me deu o endereço de Tony antes de partir.

Mary gave me Tony's address before she left.

2- Quando os meninos chegaram ao cinema, o filme já havia começado.

When the boys arrived at the cinema, the movie had already started.

3- Antes de chegarmos à estação, vimos que tínhamos nos perdido.

Before we arrived at the station, we saw that we had gotten lost.

4- Todos os ingressos haviam sido vendidos antes do início do show.

All tickets had been sold before the beginning of the show.

5- Eles tomaram banho depois de terminarem o jogo.

They took a shower after they had finished the game.

6- Eu perguntei ao Sr. Green quantos livros ele havia lido.

I asked Mr. Green how many books he had read.

7- Mamãe me perguntou por que eu não arrumei meu quarto.

Mom asked me why I hadn't cleaned my room.

8- Bob se arrependeu de ter me contado a história.

Bob regretted having told me the story.

9- Alan assistiu à TV depois de almoçar.

Alan watched TV after he had had lunch.

10- O sol brilhou ontem depois de o clima ter estado frio por várias semanas.

The sun shone yesterday after the weather had been cold for

11- O tio David foi ao médico depois de ter estado doente por um mês.

Uncle David went to the doctor after having been sick for a month.

12- Antes de a polícia pegar o ladrão, ele havia roubado mais dois relógios.

Before the police caught the thief, he had stolen two more watches.

13- Uma vez, mamãe pintou um quadro, embora nunca o tivesse aprendido.

Once, mom painted a picture, although she had never learned to.

14- Não contei ao meu professor que minha mãe havia me ajudado com o dever de casa.

I didn't tell my teacher that my mother had helped me with the homework.

15- Fiquei muito zangado quando vi que meu irmão havia comido minha maçã.

I was very angry when I saw that my brother had eaten my apple.

16- A bicicleta era muito mais cara do que ele havia pensado a princípio.

The bicycle was much more expensive than he had thought at first.

17- Papai me levou para casa depois que eu caí na água.

Dad took me home after I fell in the water.

18- Marion me perguntou o que havia acontecido comigo na semana passada.

Marion asked me what had happened to me last week.

Respostas do INTERMEDIATE ENGLISH,
referente lição 43, PG 147

A- Translate the sentences below using the phrasal verbs learned:

1- Nós poderíamos conviver melhor com nossos vizinhos.

We could get along better with our neighbors.

2- Temos muitas coisas para doar depois que finalizamos a mudança.

We have many things to give away after we finished moving.

4- O gerente se afastou depois que descobriram sobre um escândalo.

The manager stepped down after they found out about a scandal.

5- As crianças criaram uma desculpa engraçada para não serem castigadas.

The children made up a funny excuse not to be punished.

6- Você poderia me ligar de volta depois das 15h? Estou em reunião agora.

Could you ring me back after 3 p.m.? I'm in a meeting now.

7- Eu descobri que quem fala inglês fluentemente ganha até 70% a mais no salário.

I found out that those who speak English fluently earn up to 70% more.

8- O serviço de energia foi interrompido depois que houve o terremoto.

The power supply service was cut off after the earthquake happened.

9- Todos os serviços solicitados foram executados pela empresa do Fred.

All requested services were carried out by Fred's company.

10- Infelizmente o banco assumiu a empresa depois que ela faliu.

Unfortunately the bank took over the company after it broke down.

11- Eles caíram do cavalo porque ele era selvagem. Não deveriam ter montado nele.

They fell off the horse because it was a wild one. They shouldn't have ridden it.

12- Eles desistiram tão facilmente? Deveriam tentar outra vez.

Did they give up that easily? They should try again.

13- Os empresários esperam até o último minuto para investir na bolsa de valores.

Business people hold up until the last minute to invest in the stock market.

14- Meu alarme não disparou esta manhã, por isso cheguei atrasado.

My alarm didn't go off this morning, that's why I arrived late.

15- Como que eles conseguiram perceber todos esses obstáculos nessa chuva?

How did they manage to make out all these obstacles in this rain?

16- Você precisa organizar melhor esses documentos.

You need to better sort out these documents.

Answer the questions:

B- Put the words in order to make sentences:

one hour / back / will / I / ring / you / in / .

I will ring you back in one hour

being / after / down / caught / step / he / Did / ?

Did he step down after being caught?

off / My alarm / every / goes / morning / clock / .

My alarm goes off every morning.

always / along / I / My siblings / and / get / .

My siblings and I always get along.

You / your / up / should / give / never / dreams / on / .

You should never give up on your dreams.

been / out / All / problems / have / your / of / sorted / .

All of your problems have been sorted out.

to / need / who / out / lives / I / find / here / .

I need to find out who lives here.

skating / He / over / fell / he / when / was / .

He fell over when he was skating.

who / robberies / the / carried / know / out / We / .

We know who carried out the robberies.

out / The lab / experiments / many / carries / month / every / .

The lab carries out many experiments every month.

off / The energy company / our / electricity / cut / .

The energy company cut off our electricity.

on / out / streets / you / when / Look / walk / the / .

Look out when you walk on the streets.

C- Make up sentences with the phrasal verbs given below:

Back out **The troops backed out after the air raid.**

Break down **I always break down and cry after someone is mean to me.**

Break up **Their parents broke up years ago.**

Catch on **You can go jogging now, I'll catch on.**

Come back **The children don't come back from school alone.**

Die out **My patience will die out soon.**

Eat out **Her dream is to eat out at a 5-star restaurant.**

Fall off **If you don't take good care of your teeth, they will fall off!**

Answer the questions:

A- Write a sentence with each phrasal verb given and then change into negative and interrogative form:

Be upto ~~It's up to the students to decide the theme of the project.~~

Neg: ~~It isn't up to the students to decide the theme of the project.~~

Inter: ~~Is it up to the students to decide the theme of the project?~~

Breakupwith ~~She should break up with her boyfriend~~

~~She shouldn't break up with her boyfriend.~~

Neg: ~~Should she break up with her boyfriend?~~

Carry on with ~~I have the strenght to carry on with this struggle~~

Neg: ~~I don't have the strenght to carry on with this struggle.~~

Inter: ~~Do I have the strenght to carry on with this struggle?~~

Catchupwith ~~It is always good to catch up with old friends.~~

Neg: ~~It isn't always good to catch up with old friends.~~

Inter: ~~Is it always good to catch up with old friends?~~

Come up to ~~They came up to him to ask about his job.~~

Neg: ~~They didn't come up to him to ask about his job.~~

Inter: ~~Did they come up to him to ask about his job?~~

Come up with ~~Doctors can come up with a cure to this illness.~~

Neg: ~~Doctors can't come up with a cure to this illness~~

Inter: ~~Can doctors come up with a cure to this illness?~~

Crack down on ~~The principal cracked down on vandalism at the school.~~

Neg: ~~The principal didn't crack down on vandalism at the school.~~

Inter: ~~Did the principal crack down on vandalism at the school?~~

Do away ~~The mother did away with the kid's toy guns.~~

Neg: ~~The mother didn't do away with the kid's toy guns.~~

Inter: ~~Did the mother do away with the kid's toy guns?~~

Drop out of ~~Many entrepreneurs have dropped out of college.~~

Neg: ~~Many entrepreneurs haven't dropped out of college~~

Inter: ~~Have many entrepreneurs dropped out of college?~~

Get away with ~~I'll let them get away with it this time~~

Neg: ~~I won't let them get away with it this time.~~

Inter: ~~Will I let them get away with it this time?~~

Get back at ~~That guy got back at his boss for having tricked him.~~

Neg: ~~That guy didn't get back at his boss for having tricked him~~

Inter: ~~Did that guy get back at his boss for having tricked him?~~

Get back from ~~We get back from work very late.~~

Neg: ~~We don't get back from work very late~~

Inter: ~~Do we get back from work very late?~~

Complete the sentences:

- 1- We want to g_o_a_w_a_y for the weekend. We'll probably go to the beach. (travel)
- 2- I have finished all my tests. After all that stress I need to c_h_i_l_l_o_u_t. (relax)
- 3- We can s_u_m_th_e_s_i_t_u_a_t_i_o_n_u_p the situation in one word: chaos. (summarize).
- 4- I slipped on the ground and f_e_l_l_o_v_e_r. I sprained my ankle and I had to go to the hospital. (collapse)
- 5- He has broken the law, so we must make sure he doesn't g_e_t_a_w_a_y_w_i_t_h it. (escape)
- 6- the printer icon C_l_i_c_k_o_n when you want to print. (select)
- 7- I g_a_v_e_u_p smoking two years ago. I feel much healthier now. (quit)
- 8- My sister broke up with her boyfriend a year ago and she g_o_t_o_v_e_r it really quickly. She is quite happy now and is even looking for someone else. (overcome)
- 9- I usually don't g_e_t_u_p before 10 a.m. on weekends. (rise)
- 10- Your room is a mess. p_u_t_a_w_a_y all your toys and clothes immediately. (store)
- 11- They c_l_o_s_i_n_g_d_o_w_n are a lot of shops because of the crisis on the economy. (shut)
- 12- The English teacher said that we had to h_a_n_d_i_n the essay in the following day. (give)
- 13- Please, s_i_t_d_o_w_n and relax. I'll bring you a cup of tea. (rest)
- 14- the lights T_u_r_n_o_n. It is getting really dark. I can't see the blackboard. (activate)
- 15- What are you doing? I'm l_o_o_k_i_n_g_f_o_r my contact lenses. I was sure I had them in my bag and now I can't find them. (search)
- 16- America's weather always g_e_t_s_m_e_d_o_w_n me . It's always cloudy and raining. (depress)
- 17- T_a_k_e_y_o_u_r_c_o_a_t_o_f_f your coat ! It's really warm in here. (remove)
- 18- I'll l_e_t you i_n this time, but don't be late again because then you will have to leave. (allow entry)
- 19- Christmas is finished so we have to t_a_k_e_th_e_C_r_i_s_t_m_a_s_t_r_e_e_d_o_w_n the Christmas tree . (dismantle)
- 20- The concert didn't l_i_v_e_u_p_t_o my expectations. I expected something much better. (correspond)

Complete the sentences:

During their visit to the museum, they saw two very interesting photos of a street. In fact, the second picture was the edited version of the same street. In a minute they realized they were looking at the street where they currently live. It showed what would happen to it after an event like a fire or a war happened there. Until they saw those pictures, they had never thought of a disastrous event in a city. They were really scared to see their street on fire and then left the photos in silence.

A- Decide if the statements are true or false according to the text:

F

T

1- They all had been to modern art museum before. _____

2- They were in the museum before the talk of a famous artist _____

T

3- Mike and Amanda did two different activities at the same time in the museum. _____

F

4- Amanda's workshop finished before Mike and Alan left the talk with the artist _____

F

5- They knew there were some pictures of their street before they saw them in the museum.

B- Choose the right translation for each phrasal verb:

1- Get along

- a) Alongar
- b) Ir ao longo
- c) Conviver

2- Carry on with

- a) Carregar com
- b) Continuar
- c) Carregar no

3- Drop out of

- a) Abandonar
- b) Derrubar
- c) Deixar cair

4- Make up

- a) pintar
- b) construir
- c) Inventar

5- Look after

- a) Cuidar
- b) Olhar depois
- c) Observar

6- Give up

- a) Dar
- b) Ir pra cima
- c) Resistir

7- Ring

- a) Ligar de volta
- b) Anel retornado
- c) Anel

8- Look out

- a) Olhar pra
- b) Esforçar a
- c) Olhar externo

9- Get back at

- a) Voltar na
- b) Se vingar
- c) Dar de volta

Complete the sentences:

A- Complete the sentences below with the verbs in paratheses using the correct verb tense.

- 1- They have lived OR have been living in Boston for over 20 years (live).
- 2- I saw a great action movie with my friends last night. (see)
- 3- The milk was delivered very early yesterday morning (be deliver)
- 4- The sun was shining when the climber reached Mount Everest. (shine)
- 5- I promise that I won't tell this secret to anyone (not tell)
- 6- Unfortunately, just as we got to the airport their plane had taken off off (take).
- 7- They go to the movies only once in a while (go)
- 8- I was tired yesterday because I hadn't slept well the night before (not sleep).
- 9- Shhh! Someone is listening to our conversation (listen)!
- 10- When I left the house this morning, it was already raining OR had already rained (already rain)
- 11- I think Bob left for work right now.(leave)
- 12- The plane will take off off in a few minutes. (take)
- 13- I get up up at 7 every morning but this morning I slept long and I didn't get up up until 8. (get, sleep, not get)
- 14- I am not wearing my watch because it is being fixed (not wear).
- 15- This has been an easy quiz so far (be).
- 16- They are living in an apartment right now because they can't find a cheap house. (live)
- 17- Everyone was sleeping when the earthquake hit the small town. (sleep)
- 18- She has been living OR had been living by herself since her divorce (live)
- 19- I was angry that I had made such a stupid mistake (make).
- 20- I predict that by 2025, man will have landed on Mars (land)
- 21- He quit his job a couple of years ago. (quit)
- 22- Our daughter hasn't graduated from the university yet (graduate).
- 23- They didn't send any Christmas cards last year (not send)
- 24- She goes to a doctor once a year for an examination (go)
- 25- They were talking about me when I interrupted their conversation. (talk)
- 26- Nothing much was happening when I got to the meeting (happen).
- 27- My parents are going to be in New York two weeks from today (be)

